BEGINNER’S LATIN BOOK

WILLIAM C. COLLAR
AND
M. GRANT DANIELL

This public domain grammar was brought to digital life by:

Textkit – Greek and Latin Learning tools

Find more grammars at http://www.textkit.com
THE

BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.,
Head-Master Roxbury Latin School,

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.,
Principal Chauncy-Hall School, Boston.

Longum iter est per praecptu, breve et efficax per exempla.
Seneca.

Boston, U.S.A., and London:
Published by Ginn & Company.
1891.
LATINE REDDENDA:
EXERCISES FROM
THE BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

The authors of the "Beginner's Latin Book" are of the opinion that a separate edition of the exercises for turning English into Latin will be a great convenience to teachers.

After the exercises have been done once with the help of the special vocabularies and under the direction and criticism of the teacher, it will be found useful to review them again and again, sometimes orally, sometimes in writing, with all helps in the way of rules, special vocabularies, and model sentences removed. The pupil is thus left to depend entirely upon his previous study and faithful attention to his teacher's instructions.

It is believed also that teachers who use other elementary Latin books will be glad to have, in cheap and convenient form, a set of exercises which they can use as supplementary to their regular work. For such, an edition is published with an English-Latin vocabulary.

Both editions have the Glossarium Grammaticum for the aid of those who wish to conduct recitations in Latin.

INTRODUCTION PRICES.
Edition with Glossarium Grammaticum (bound in paper), 20 cents.
THE aim of this book is to serve as a preparation for reading, writing, and, to a less degree, for speaking Latin. It is designed primarily for boys and girls who are to begin the study of Latin at an early age; but as all who would get from Latin the best mental discipline, or lay a broad and firm foundation for Latin scholarship, must traverse pretty much the same road, and as Latin is begun in this country by most learners before any other foreign language is studied, a beginner's Latin book for those who take up the study at the age of ten or twelve need not be essentially different from one designed for learners of fourteen or fifteen. The most important difference would lie in the knowledge of the terminology and principles of English grammar that might be deemed an indispensable prerequisite. As a matter of fact, children come to the study of Latin with all degrees of ignorance of English grammar, and the minimum of necessary knowledge for the beginner is unquestionably very small. What minimum is considered essential for those who use this book, is indicated on page 6. It is hoped, therefore, that the contents of the book will justify its title; that it does not assume too much, and is not too difficult for the least mature who are likely to use it, and that it will not be found too much simplified,—too juvenile, for those who begin Latin in high schools and academies. Simplicity, clearness, and directness have been studied throughout. The system of inflected forms, which is seldom mastered, but the mastery of which is an indis-
pensable condition of further pleasant, successful, and profitable study, is slowly but very fully developed, with the addition of abundant and varied exercises. For convenience, as well as on educational grounds, the paradigm of the verb is given in one block, instead of in fragments detached and dispersed, and everywhere the active and passive forms are placed side by side, to be compared, and learned as they are treated, simultaneously.

The idea underlying and controlling the plan is the maximum of practice with the minimum of theory, on the principle that the thorough acquisition of the elements of Latin must be more of art than science,—more the work of observation, comparison, and imitation, than the mechanical following of rules, or the exercise of analysis and conscious inductive reasoning.

The book contains:

1. A brief introduction explaining the Roman and English methods of pronunciation, the necessary paradigms, an outline of the most important principles of syntax, and a large number of exercises for translation into English and into Latin, accompanied by short explanatory notes.

2. About twenty-five simple Latin dialogues, added to as many chapters. Some of these are on subjects of the lessons, and include a good many grammatical terms; some are on various topics of school and holiday life; and others on subjects historical and mythological.

3. Easy selections for translation, consisting besides a number of fables, of extracts from Viri Romae, Nepos, Ovid, Catullus, Cæsar, and Cicero, some interspersed with the lessons, others added at the end of the book.

Those who seek in a first Latin book a complete presentation of the facts and principles of the Latin language, will not be satisfied with this volume. But, in the opinion of the authors, there is no error in elementary instruction in Latin more common and more deplorable than that of failing to
discriminate between the relatively important and unimportant; between what is suited to the beginning and what to the more advanced stages of the study. It is not too much to say that a very great part of the barrenness and futility of the teaching and study of Latin in schools is due to this lack of discrimination, and to a false conception of thoroughness. It is not intended to imply that a hard and fast line can be drawn, still less is this book offered as a realization in this respect of the ideal. The ideal is never realized. But it has been the constant aim to make just this distinction: to determine everywhere, in the light of much observation and reflection and of long experience, what should be made the subject of immediate study, and what should be postponed; what is entitled to prominence, and what ought to be subordinated. Some excellent teachers think that the subjunctive mood should have no place in a preparatory Latin book; and undoubtedly the syntax of the subjunctive does involve too many and too great difficulties for such a work, if anything more than an outline of some commoner uses is attempted. On the other hand, the learner can hardly read any Latin without encountering forms of the subjunctive. The best way then seems to be to construct a large number of very short sentences for practice on the forms, which shall exhibit, in the briefest compass, some important and most frequently recurring uses of the mood, more especially because the ways of translating the subjunctive cannot be illustrated from the isolated forms in the paradigms, as in the other moods. This idea has been worked out in part in Chapter LIV., the forms having been previously left untranslated.

The *colloquia* have been added, not as an integral and necessary part of the lessons, but to serve as an incentive to the moderate use of Latin orally in recitation, and to afford convenient exercises for training the ear and for enlarging the vocabulary of the learner. The grammatical terms have
been drawn chiefly from the *Institutiones* of Rudimann. The *colloquium* on page 5 has been borrowed from Dr. H. Meurer’s *Lateinisches Lesebuch*, and suggestions and parts of the materials for a very few others have been derived from the same source; also two or three of the passages for translation, and here and there some sentences in the exercises. Whoever examines these *colloquia* with a critical eye, will find some words which are confined to the vocabularies of grammarians and commentators, and a very few others employed in senses for which it would be embarrassing to be required to cite classical authority. For example, the word *pensum* is used often in the sense of a *schoolboy’s task*, *something to be done or learned*, a *lesson*. This word doubtless meant strictly a *spinner’s task*. But in classical Latin it had already approached the meaning *task* in general, and it is but a very slight extension of its application to employ it as it is in the *colloquia*. Such a moderate decanting of new wine into old bottles, it is hoped may be excused. Still if any teacher thinks that the Latinity of his pupils will be injured by the use of the *colloquia*, it is optional with him to omit them altogether, without losing the continuity of the lessons.

The complaint is very common, and its justice must be acknowledged, that first Latin books are often excessively and needlessly arid and wooden. Accordingly an effort has been made, while following a rigorously scientific method in the development of the successive subjects, to impart something of attractiveness, interest, freshness, and variety to the study of the elements of Latin by means of the *colloquia*, the choice of extracts for translation (introduced as early as possible), and the mode of treatment in every part, extending even to the choice of Latin words, and to the construction of many of the exercises.

Usage is not fixed in respect to the so-called principal parts of verbs, a few of the later school manuals giving the
nominative masculine of the perfect participle, instead of the supine, except in the case of neuter or intransitive verbs. It has been thought better in this book to follow the prevailing practice, only to treat the form that has been called the supine in this connection, not as the supine,—which in most cases it is not and cannot be, since, as is well known, only about 230 verbs can be proved to have a supine,—but as the neuter of the perfect participle.¹ Thus the learner is guarded against errors and is spared the perplexity of having to memorize now one, now another form.

It is hoped that this book can be finished and reviewed by the average learner in a year, and that the transition then to Viri Romae, Nepos, or Cæsar will not prove too difficult. More than two-thirds of the words used belong to the vocabulary of Cæsar, and only a trifle less than two-thirds to that of Nepos. In the case of young pupils it may be advisable to omit the translation of the English exercises into Latin, beginning with Chapter LV., till after the selections for translation at the end of the book have been read.

It remains to acknowledge the generous assistance of several scholars. Professor George M. Lane, of Harvard University, Professor George L. Kittredge, of Exeter Academy, N.H., George F. Forbes, A.M., and D. O. S. Lowell, A.M., both of the Roxbury Latin School, and Marshall W. Davis, A.B., of Thayer Academy, Braintree, read and criticised the work in manuscript. Mr. Forbes and Mr. Lowell also read the proof-sheets and made important suggestions and corrections. The authors feel especially indebted to John Tetlow, A.M., Head-Master of the Boston Girls' High and Latin Schools, and author of Inductive Lessons in Latin, for critically reading the proof-sheets, and for materially contributing to the improvement of the book by

¹ This plan has been followed by Dr. R. F. Leighton in his First Steps in Latin.
the correction of errors, and by the suggestions of his conscientious and exact scholarship.

Thanks are due to Mr. J. S. Cushing, under whose personal direction the book has been printed, for the patience, care, and skill which he has constantly exercised to make the work typographically as faultless as possible.

WM. C. COLLAR.
M. GRANT DANIELL.

Boston, Sept. 1, 1886.

The authors desire to express their grateful acknowledgments to Miss Caroline E. Stone, of the Roxbury Latin School, and to Professor E. M. Wallank, of Fort Worth, Texas, for the correction of errors that had been overlooked in the first editions.

1889.
CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAPTER</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Introductory: Alphabet, Syllables, Quantity, Accent, Cases, Gender</td>
<td>1-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. First Declension. — Direct Object. — Possessive Dative. — Indirect Object</td>
<td>7-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Second Declension. — Words in us and um. — Predicate Noun</td>
<td>13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. First and Second Declensions. — Agreement of Adjectives. — Colloquium, 58</td>
<td>17-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Second Declension. — Words in er. — Ablative of Agent</td>
<td>20-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Second Declension. — Words in er. — Paradigms of Adjectives of First and Second Declensions</td>
<td>22-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. The Verb Sum: Paradigm</td>
<td>25-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. The Verb Sum: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — Colloquium, 80</td>
<td>27-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX. The Verb Sum: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — Colloquium, 85</td>
<td>30-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. First Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Amō</td>
<td>32-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI. First Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive.— Ablative of Means.— Colloquium, 95</td>
<td>35-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII. First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive</td>
<td>39-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII. Third Declension: Mute Stems. — Colloquium, 111</td>
<td>41-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV. Second Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Moneō</td>
<td>44-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV. Second Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive</td>
<td>46-49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS

CHAPTER PAGE
XVI. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — Colloquium, 126 49-52
XVII. Review of First and Second Conjugations.— Ablative of Separation. — Colloquium, 133 53-55
XVIII. Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — Ablative of Time. — Colloquium, 139 56-58
XIX. Third Declension: Sibilant Stems. — Ablative of Manner. — Colloquium, 148 59-62
XX. Third Declension: Stems in i. — Apposition. — Colloquium, 162 62-67
XXI. Third Declension: Mixed Stems. — Rules of Gender. — Colloquium, 173 68-72
XXII. Third Declension: Review 72-73
XXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Regō, 74-76
XXIV. Third Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — Colloquium, 187. — Passage for Translation, 188 76-80
XXV. Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — Colloquium, 195 80-84
XXVI. Review. — Passage for Translation, 199 84-86
XXVII. Irregular Adjectives. — Colloquium, 204 86-89
XXVIII. Comparison of Adjectives. — Declension of the Comparative. — Ablative with Comparatives. — Passage for Translation, 215 89-92
XXIX. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. — Colloquium, 222 93-96
XXX. Fourth Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Audiō 96-98
XXXI. Fourth Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive 69-100
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XXXII.</td>
<td>Fourth Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 234</td>
<td>101–103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIII.</td>
<td>Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb <em>Capiō</em></td>
<td>104–105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIV.</td>
<td>Third Conjugation: Verbs in <em>ū</em>. — Tenses of the Indicative; Present Imperative; Present and Perfect Infinitive</td>
<td>106–107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXV.</td>
<td>Review of the Four Conjugations. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 242</td>
<td>108–110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVI.</td>
<td>Fourth Declension</td>
<td>110–112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVII.</td>
<td>Fifth Declension. — Ablative of Specification. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 261</td>
<td>112–115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVIII.</td>
<td>Special Paradigms. — Passage for Translation,</td>
<td>115–116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIX.</td>
<td>Personal and Possessive Pronouns. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 269</td>
<td>117–119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XL.</td>
<td>Determinative Pronouns. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 274.</td>
<td>120–122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLI.</td>
<td>Demonstrative Pronouns</td>
<td>123–125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLI.</td>
<td>Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns. — Agreement of Relative</td>
<td>126–130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIII.</td>
<td>Review of Pronouns. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 290. —</td>
<td>130–134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Passage for Translation, 291</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIV.</td>
<td>Compounds of <em>Sum</em>. — Dative</td>
<td>134–137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLV.</td>
<td>Deponent Verbs: First and Second Conjugations. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 302.</td>
<td>137–140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVI.</td>
<td>Deponent Verbs: Third and Fourth Conjugations. — Ablative with <em>Ūtōr</em>, etc. — Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting</td>
<td>140–142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVII.</td>
<td>Numerals. — Accusative of Extent</td>
<td>143–146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVIII.</td>
<td>Irregular Verbs: <em>Volō, Nōlō, Mālō</em>. — Passage for Translation, 320.</td>
<td>146–149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIX.</td>
<td>Irregular Verbs: <em>Ferō</em> and its compounds</td>
<td>149–152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Eō, Pīō</em>. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 332,</td>
<td>152–156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LI.</td>
<td>Prepositions. — Expressions of Place. — Passage for Translation, 339.</td>
<td>156–160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LII. Partitive Genitive. — Descriptive Ablative and Genitive. — Dative with Intransitives. — Dative of Service</td>
<td>160-161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIII. Derivation. — Comparison of Words</td>
<td>162-164</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIV. The Subjunctive: Sequence of Tenses. — Forms. — Purpose Clauses with Ut and Nē</td>
<td>164-171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV. The Subjunctive: Relative of Purpose</td>
<td>171-172</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVI. The Subjunctive: Result Clauses with Ut and Nē</td>
<td>173-174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVII. The Subjunctive: Cum Temporal; Cum Causal and Concessive. — Passage for Translation, 378</td>
<td>175-178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVIII. The Subjunctive: Indirect Questions</td>
<td>178-180</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIX. The Subjunctive: Wishes and Conditions. — Colloquium, 388</td>
<td>180-184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX. The Subjunctive and Imperative. — Passage for Translation, 394</td>
<td>184-187</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXI. The Infinitive</td>
<td>187-188</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXII. Accusative and Infinitive: Indirect Discourse. — Passage for Translation, 407</td>
<td>189-194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIII. Participles</td>
<td>194-196</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIV. Participles: Ablative Absolute</td>
<td>197-199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXV. Impersonal Verbs: Miseret, etc. — Intransitive Verbs in Passive. — Passage for Translation, 421</td>
<td>200-203</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXVI. Periphrastic Conjugations: Dative of Agent</td>
<td>204-207</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXVII. Gerund. — Gerundive. — Supine</td>
<td>208-210</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reading Lessons: Letters. — Fables. — Caesar’s Two Invasions of Britain. — Customs and Habits of the Britons | 211-222 |

Latin-English Vocabulary | 223-259 |

English-Latin Vocabulary | 260-273 |

Glossarium Grammaticum | 274-276 |
BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY.

It is suggested to teachers who are not experienced in teaching Latin that this chapter may, perhaps, be most profitably used for reference. Pupils will catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher; and as they make mistakes, they will be interested in being referred to the rules of pronunciation. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the *Colloquium*, page 5, pronouncing slowly each sentence, the pupils following successively, and then together. In the same way the teacher might then construe literally.

1. **Alphabet.**—The Latin alphabet has no *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

2. **Vowels.**—Vowels may be long (marked thus "), short (marked thus "), or common¹ (marked thus "). The long vowel occupies double the time of the short in pronouncing.

3. **Consonants.**—Of the consonants

   The mutes are: P-mutes . . . *p, b, f*
   T-mutes . . . *t, d*
   K-mutes . . . *k, c, g, q (u)*
   The liquids are . . . . . . *l, m, n, r*
   The sibilant is . . . . . . . *s*
   The double consonants are . . . *x = cs,*² *z = ds.*

¹ That is, sometimes long and sometimes short.    ² Also represents the combinations *hs, quis, gs, vs.*

**Vowels.**

ä is sounded like the last a in papâ.
ä  " "  the first a in papâ.
ë  " "  e in they.
ë  " "  e in met.
i  " "  i in machine.
i  " "  i in pin.
io  " "  o in holy.
io  " "  o in wholly.¹
uu  " "  oo in boot.
ù  " "  oo in foot.

**Diphthongs.**

ae is sounded like ai in aisle.
au  " "  ou in our.
ei  " "  ei in eight.
oe  " "  oi in boil.
eu  " "  eu in feud.
ui  " "  we.

**Consonants.**

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in English. But observe the following:

- c is sounded like c in come.
- g  " "  g in get.
- j  " "  y in yes.
- s  " "  s in sun.³
- t  " "  t in time.⁴
- v  " "  vo in wine.
- ch  " "  k in kite.

¹ That is, as the word is commonly pronounced; the sound heard in holy, shortened.
² In qu, and also commonly in gu and su before a vowel, u is a semi-vowel or consonant, and is pronounced like w.
³ Never like z.
⁴ Never like sh.
5. SYLLABLES.

1. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **ae-gri-tū'-dō**, sickness.

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: **a-mā'-bi-lis**, amiable.

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: **im'-pro-bus**, bad; **ho-spe**s, guest.

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts: **ab'-est** (ab, away; est, he is), he is away.

5. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

6. QUANTITY.

1. A vowel is short before a vowel (with few exceptions) or **h**, also probably before **nt** and **nd**: **pō'-ē'-ma**, poem; **grā'-ti-ae**, thanks; **nī'-hil**, nothing; a'-mānt, they love; **mō-nēn'-dus**, to be advised.

2. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, vowels resulting from contraction, and vowels followed by **nf, ns, j**, and commonly **gn**, are long: **in'-Ī'-quus** (inae-quus), unequal; cō'-gō (cōāgō), collect; cōn'-fe-rō, bring together; mēn'-sa, table; hū'-jus, of him; mā'-gnus, great. In this book only long vowels are marked, unless for some special reason.
3. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: vō'-cēs, voices; ac'-dēs, temple.

4. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute followed by l or r), or by x or z; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: sunt,¹ they are; tem'-plum, temple; dux,¹ leader.

5. A syllable is common if it has a short vowel followed by a mute with l or r: te'-nē-brae, darkness. The vowel is pronounced short.

The above statements are useful in determining the place of the accent.

7. Accent.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: tu'-ba, trumpet.

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, otherwise on the antepenult: prae-di'-cō, foretell; prae'-di-cō, declare; ille'-cē-brae, snares; pa-ter'-nus,² paternal.

(1) Several words, called enclitics, of which the commonest are ne, the sign of a question, and que, and, are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the ne or que: amat'-ne, does he love? dōna'-que, and gifts.

8. English Method of Pronunciation.—By this method the above rules relating to syllables (5) and accent (7) are observed, and words are pronounced substantially as in English; but final es is sounded as in English ease, and final ēs (acc. plur.) as in dose.

¹ u pronounced like oo in foot. ² Here, though the vowel of the penult is short, the syllable is long by 6. 4.
The following colloquium may be used, if the teacher wishes, for practice, and to illustrate the foregoing statements. See introductory note, page 1.

9.

**Augustus.** Quid tibi vis?

**Iulius.** Técum ambuláre velim.

A. Ego nóló; domi manère málō.

I. Qúr mávís?

A. Ego et fráter vesperí cum patre ambuláre málumus.

I. Qúr mécum per sínvás vagári non vultis?

A. Quod vesperí amoenítáté frui málumus quam sólis ardóre.

I. At jam saepe mécum ambuláre nólústi.

A. Nón récté dicís; nón est causa cür técum ambuláre nólím; at cum hortus aví satis amplius sit et lacum silvamique contineat, ibi málumus ládere. Si vís, nóbiscum veni.

**What do you wish (for yourself)?**

I should like to take a walk with you.

I don’t want to; I prefer to stay at home.

Why do you prefer (that)?

My brother and I had rather take a walk at evening with our father.

Why don’t you want to roam with me through the woods?

Because we had rather enjoy the pleasantness of evening than the heat of the sun.

But often before now you have not wanted to walk with me.

What you say is not true; there is no reason why I should not want to walk with you; but since grandfather’s garden is quite large, and has a pond and a grove, we had rather play there. If you like, come with us.

10. Cases.

1. The names of the cases in Latin are: nominative, vocative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative.
2. The vocative is the case of address, but it does not differ in form from the nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in *us* of the second declension, and hence is not elsewhere given separately in the paradigms.

3. Another case, the *locative*, which denotes the place of an action, is mostly confined to proper names, and has the form of the ablative (sometimes dative) singular or plural, or of the genitive singular.

**11. Gender.**—The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

1. Nouns denoting males are *masculine*: *agricola*, farmer; *Cicerō*, Cicero.

2. Nouns denoting females are *feminine*: *rēgīna*, queen; *Tullia*, Tullia.

3. Names of rivers, winds, and months are *masculine*: *Padus*, Po; *aquilō*, north wind; *Jānuārius*, January.

4. Names of countries, towns, islands, and trees, are *feminine*: *Āfrica*, Africa; *Rōma*, Rome; *Sicilia*, Sicily; *pirus*, pear-tree.

5. Indeclinable nouns are *neuter*: *fās*, right.

Other rules of gender will be given under the several declensions.

---

It is assumed that the learner knows the names and functions of the parts of speech in English, and the meanings of the common grammatical terms, such as *subject* and *predicate*, *case*, *mood*, *tense*, *voice*, *declension*, *conjugation*, etc. So much knowledge is absolutely essential for entering upon the study of the following lessons.
CHAPTER II. 1.

FIRST DECLENSION.

12. The stem\(^1\) ends in a.

13. Gender.—The gender is feminine; but see general rules, 11.

14. PARADIGM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. tubă, a trumpet.</td>
<td>N.V. tubae, trumpets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. tubae, of a trumpet.</td>
<td>G. tubārum, of trumpets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. tubae, to or for a trumpet.</td>
<td>D. tubīs, to or for trumpets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. tubam, a trumpet.</td>
<td>Ac. tubās, trumpets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. tubā,(^2) with a trumpet.</td>
<td>Ab. tubīs, with trumpets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. For the reason why the vocative case is not given separately in the paradigm see 10. 2.

2. Examples of the locative case (10. 3) in this declension are: Rōmae, at Rome; Athēnīs, at Athens.

15. Terminations.—These consist of case-endings, joined with the final letter of the stem. But sometimes the final letter of the stem is lost, and sometimes the case-ending.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. a . . . . . . ae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ae . . . . . . ārum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ae . . . . . . īs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. am . . . . . . ās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ā . . . . . . īs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) The stem is the common base to which certain letters are added to express the relation of the word to other words.

\(^2\) The ablative is variously rendered, according to its connection. It is therefore recommended that, in declining words, no translation of the ablative be given till its use has been illustrated. See p. 20, n. 1.
16. Observe that the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike; also the dative and ablative plural.

17. In Latin there is no article: tuba may be translated a trumpet, the trumpet, or trumpet.

18. The pupil should commit to memory the table of terminations.

2. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.
aquila, f., eagle.
cauda, f., tail.
columba, f., dove.
filia, f., daughter.
pella, f., girl.
regina, f., queen.
rosa, f., rose.
via, f., road, street, way.

ADJECTIVES.3
alba, white.
bona, good.
dura, hard.
latum, wide, broad.
longum, long.
magna, large.
mala, bad.
parva, small, little.

VERBS.
est, (he, she, it) is.
sunt, (they) are.
habet, (he, she, it) has.
habent, (they) have.

20. Observe that in the above verb-forms the singular ends in t, and the plural in nt.

' NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

EXERCISES.


1 Filia and dea, goddess, have a dative and ablative plural in -ibus, but this is mostly confined to legal and religious language.

2 Caution: Do not pronounce s like z, if you use the Roman method. See page 2, note 3.

3 The masculine and neuter of adjectives will be taken up in connection with nouns of the second declension.

4 Observe that the adjective takes the case and number of the noun to which it belongs.
lumbae parvae. 11. Columba parva. 12. Columbam par-

II. In like manner give the nominative and accusative in both
numbers of the words meaning little girl, great eagle, good queen,
wide street. Decline together rosa alba, via longa, bona puella.

3.

22. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Via est longa. 2. Dūra est via. 3. Puellae rosās
habent. 4. Rēgīna columbam habet. 5. Rosae sunt albae.
6. Cauda est alba. 7. Caudae sunt longae. 8. Aquila caud-
am habet. 9. Puellae tubās habent. 10. Aquilae sunt
māgnae.

II. 1. Via dūra est longa. 2. Puella bona rosam habet.
3. Columba caudam parvam habet. 4. Rēgīnae albās rosās
habent. 5. Rosa parva est alba. 6. Aquila māgna est alba.
7. Tubae māgnae sunt longae. 8. Puella tubam longam
habet. 9. Filiae bonae columbās habent. 10. Aquila māgna
lātam caudam habet.

23. Notice the order of the words in the above sentences, and
see wherein it differs from the order in English. You will find
that—

1. The adjective is commonly placed after its noun. When
placed before the noun it is for emphasis.
2. The verb commonly comes at the end of the sentence, but
est and sunt are less frequently so placed.
3. The object commonly comes before the verb.

24. Observe that the subject is in the nominative case, and
that the verb agrees with it in number, as in English.

25. Observe that the verb habet (habent) is transitive, and
has its object in the accusative.

26. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The direct object of a
transitive verb is in the accusative case.
27. EXERCISES.
I. 1. The roads are broad. 2. The streets are long. 3. Queens have doves. 4. The girl has a rose. 5. Eagles have tails. 6. The dove is white. 7. The girl has a trumpet. 8. The eagle is large. 9. The rose is white. 10. The girls are small.

II. 1. The long way is hard. 2. Good girls have roses. 3. Doves have small tails. 4. Great eagles have broad tails. 5. The good queen has a dove. 6. The little girls have large trumpets. 7. The little dove is white. 8. The queen is good. 9. The good queen has a little daughter. 10. A little girl has a white rose.

28. Answer the following in Latin:

29. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.
äla, f., wing. Galba, m., Galba.
Britainia, f., Britain. hōra, f., hour.
Cornelia, f., Cornelia. lūna, f., moon.

ADJECTIVES.
multa, much (pl. many). amat, (he, she, it) loves.
plēna, full. amant, (they) love.
prima, first. dat, (he, she, it) gives.
secunda, second. dant, (they) give.

CONJUNCTION.
et, and. non, not.

1 Every answer should form a complete sentence. To the question est ne via longa? the answer should be via est longa.

2 The particle ne is appended to some word in a sentence, often the verb, as a sign of a question, and is not to be translated by any separate word.
30. EXERCISES.


II. 1. The queen’s daughter. 2. The queens’ daughters. 3. For the girl’s rose. 4. Of the wings of the dove. 5. For Cornelia’s daughter. 6. Of Britain. 7. For eagles. 8. Of the long streets. 9. For the little girls. 10. To the small trumpet.

6.

31. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Puellae (dative) est rosa. 2. Puella rosam habet.
3. Rēgīnīs sunt columbae. 4. Rēgīnae columbās habent.


32. The first sentence in I. is literally translated to the girl is a rose. Evidently the meaning is the girl has a rose, the same as that of the second. The dative thus used with est or sunt is called the Dative of the Possessor, or the Possessive Dative.

---

1 Galba’s daughter. The genitive is often to be translated by the English possessive.
2 Translate, his daughter.
3 It is.
33. Examine the seventh sentence in I. The transitive verb dat has a direct object, columbam; but it also has a dative limiting it, filiae. This dative is called an Indirect Object. Find other illustrations of the following:

34. **Rule of Syntax. — The indirect object is put in the dative.**

7.

35. **EXERCISES.**

1. Before turning the following sentences into Latin, translate mentally 2, 6, and 10, in 31. II., taking the words as they stand. Observe that the indirect object precedes the direct.

2. In the following exercises try to cast each sentence into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words. Thus, the sixth sentence will take the form, the girl to the queen a rose gives; and the eighth, to a girl little is a rose little, or a girl little a rose little has.

I. 1. It\(^1\) is the first hour. 2. There\(^2\) is a full moon. 3. The moon is full. 4. The dove is small. 5. The tail of the eagle is broad. 6. The girl gives the queen\(^3\) a rose. 7. The queen’s roses are white. 8.\(^4\) A little girl has a little rose. 9. The first hour is a long one.\(^5\) 10. Galba gives the girls some\(^6\) roses.

II. 1. The queen’s daughter has a white rose. 2. The queen of Britain gives the girl a great rose. 3. It is the second hour of the full moon. 4. The daughters of Cornelia are small girls.\(^5\) 5. The daughters of Cornelia are good little\(^6\) girls.\(^5\) 6. The little dove’s tail is a long one. 7. The wings of eagles are long and broad. 8. Eagles have long, broad\(^7\) wings. 9. The little dove has a white tail. 10.\(^4\) Many doves have white tails.

---

\(^1\) Omit. Compare 31. II. 3 and 4.

\(^2\) Omit.

\(^3\) That is, to the queen. Compare 31. I. 7, 8, and 9; and 31. II. 2, 6, and 10.

\(^4\) Translate in two ways, like 31. I., 1 and 2, 3 and 4.

\(^5\) Nominative.

\(^6\) In Latin, good and little.

\(^7\) Long and broad.
CHAPTER III. 1.
SECOND DECLENSION.

36. The stem ends in o.

37. Gender.—Nouns ending in um are neuter; most others are masculine; but see general rules for gender, 11. 4.

38. HORTUS, garden.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. hortus, e</td>
<td>hortī</td>
<td>N.V. bellum</td>
<td>bella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. hortī</td>
<td>hortōrum</td>
<td>G. bellī</td>
<td>bellōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. hortō</td>
<td>hortīs</td>
<td>D. bellō</td>
<td>bellīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. hortum</td>
<td>hortōs</td>
<td>Ac. bellum</td>
<td>bella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. hortō</td>
<td>hortīs</td>
<td>Ab. bellō</td>
<td>bellīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

39. The vocative singular of nouns in us of this declension ends in ē.

1. As these are the only Latin nouns having a form for the vocative different from the nominative, this peculiarity is best regarded and treated as an exception.

40. Examples of the locative case (10. 3) in this declension are: Corinthī, at Corinth; Thūriīs, at Thūriī.

41. TERMINATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. us, e</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ī</td>
<td>ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ō</td>
<td>ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. um</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ō</td>
<td>ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

42. Although the stem ends in o, the o does not appear except in the dat. and abl. singular and in the gen. and acc. plural.

1 For peculiarities of nouns in īus and īum see 79.
SECOND DECLENSION.

2.

43. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.
amicus, friend.
cibus, food.
discipulus, pupil.
dominus, lord, master.
equus, horse.
servus, slave or servant.

Neuter.
braceium, arm. (79.)
dōnum, gift.
ūvum, egg.
pilum, javelin.
pŏculum, cup.
vinum, wine.

ADJECTIVES.

dēfessus, -a, -um, tired.
dūrus, -a, -um, hard.
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing.

novus, -a, -um, new.

VERBS.

laudat, (he, she, it) praises.¹
laudant, (they) praise.
portat, (he, she, it) carries.
portant, (they) carry.

44. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three terminations to mark the different genders: bonus, masculine; bona, feminine; bonum, neuter. The feminine of the adjective is declined like tuba, the masculine like hortus, and the neuter like bellum. The full declension of bonus is given on page 24.²

1. Form the masculine and neuter of all the adjectives in 19 and 29.

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

45. EXERCISES.


¹ Laudat may be translated praises, is praising, or does praise. So of the other verb-forms.
² In declining adjectives, it will be found advantageous to decline each gender separately.
II. 1. In like manner form the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning long
javelin, hard master, small horse, good wine. Decline together bonus cibus, servus malus, vinum novum.

46. Examine the following sentences:

Galba est amīcus, Galba is a friend.
Galba et Cornēlia sunt amīci, Galba and Cornelia are friends.

1. Observe in these examples that the subject and predicate nouns are in the same case, just as in English.

47. Rule of Syntax.—A noun in the predicate referring to the same person or thing as the subject is in the same case.

3.

48. Exercises.


II. 1. The servant has the cup. 2. The servants have the cups. 3. The pupil has wine and eggs. 4. The master has good food. 5. The gifts are long javelins. 6. The master and the slave are good friends. 7. The little horses are tired. 8. The new pupil has a big cup. 9. They praise the second horse. 10. He is praising the good master. 11. They have some good friends. 12. The slave carries the cups and wine.

---

1 The adjective must be of the same gender as the noun.
2 See page 19, note 1.
3 Omit.
4.

GENITIVE AND DATIVE.

EXERCISES.


II. In like manner, form the genitive and dative in both numbers of the words meaning long javelin, hard master, small, horse, good wine. Decline together bonus amīcus, discipulus malus, dōnum grātum.

5.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dōnum amīci bonī est grātum. 2. Servī bonī domi-

II. 1. The gift is pleasing to the good friend. 2. The slave has the master’s cup. 3. The servants have the masters’ cups. 4. The master gives the slave a hard egg. 5. The food of the master is wine and eggs. 6. The master praises the little pupil’s cup. 7. The tired horses are carrying gifts for the friend. 8. The girl has many new friends. 9. The broad cup is pleasing to the new pupil. 10. The eagle’s eggs are gifts of the good servant.

1 When there is no subject expressed in the sentence, how is the verb to be rendered?

2 Translate in two ways. See 82.

3 Not accusative.

4 Many and new.
6.

51. Answer the following in Latin:

1. Quid portat Jacōbus (James)?
2. Portatne dominō vinum et ōva?
3. Nōnne portat ōva columbae albae?
4. Laudatne caudam longam equī albi?
5. Quid, Jacōbe, habet dominī filia in (in) pōculō?

Form and answer five other questions in Latin.

---

CHAPTER IV. 1.
FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

52. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

Masculine.

agricola, -ae, farmer.
nauta, -ae, sailor.
pōēta, -ae, poet.
carrus, -i, wagon.
rēmus, -i, oar.
ventus, -i, wind.

Neuter.
frūmentum, -i, grain.
pābulum, -i, fodder.

ADJECTIVES.

clārus, -a, -um, famous.
peritus, -a, -um, skilful.
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.
quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.
tertius, -a, -um, third.
validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy.

PREPOSITION.

in (with ablative), in, on.
in (with accusative), into, to.

53. In the preceding exercises an adjective qualifying a noun has had the same termination as the noun. Now observe the following examples: agriculta bonus, a good farmer; agricultae bōnī, of a good farmer; agricultae bōnō, to or for a good farmer, etc. Here the adjective has a different termination from the noun. Since agriculta is masculine, the adjective that goes with it must have the masculine form, as well as the same number and case.

1 See note 1, p. 10.
2 for, not to, the master.
3 When ne is appended to nōn, the answer yes is expected. See note 2, p. 10. So in English, a question asked with not expects the answer yes.
4 See 11. 1.
54. Rule of Syntax.—Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

EXERCISES.


56. EXERCISES.

II. 1. Ō agricola valide, carrus est plēnus frūmentī. 2. Domine bone, secunda hōra est, et discipulus est dō-fessus. 3. Hortōs agricolārum perītōrum laudant. 4. Pōculum māgnum est vinī plēnum. 5. Agricola bonus equō validō dat pābulum.

1 See 32.
2 We may translate, there is a full moon, it is a full moon, or the moon is full. There is nothing in Latin answering to our it and there used in this way at the beginning of a sentence.
3 Translate this sentence without changing the order of the words, and you will feel the emphasis imparted to nautae from its position.
4 Ō sometimes accompanies the vocative.
3.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. The poet likes the farmer’s wine. 2. Farmers have large wagons and strong horses. 3. Skillful sailors like a good breeze. 4. In the garden there are many roses. 5. The poet and his daughter are in the wagon. 6. The horse carries the farmer’s grain. 7. There is wine in the little girl’s cup. 8. There are many small girls in the street. 9. Galba carries fodder for the horses. 10. The food of the little dove is grain.

II. 1. My good friend, the master’s cup is full. 2. The servant gives the queen a large cup. 3. The strong sailors are carrying javelins in their arms. 4. In the strong wagon is good fodder for the farmer’s horses. 5. In the poet’s gardens there are many friends. 6. Farmers have horses, wagons, doves, eggs, and wine.

4.

COLLOQUIUM.

Datne Carolus (Charles) amicō cymbam (boat)?
Carolus amicō cymbam et rēmōs dat.
Quid in cymbā habet Carolus?
Carolus rēnum et pīlum in cymbā habet.
Quota (what) hōra est? Hōra est quīnta.
Quid in carrō habet rūsticus (countryman) validus?
Quid in pōculō dēsīderat (wants) rūsticus dēfessus?

---

1 Occasionally words occur in the English exercises which are purposely not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but by a little thought the pupil will understand what Latin word is meant.

2 Translate in two ways.

3 Omit.

4 Many and small.

5 Not accusative.

6 Remember that ne is appended as the sign of a question.

7 What time is it? or, What is the time of day?
CHAPTER V. 1.
SECOND DECLENSION.

59. **Puer**, boy.

| SINGULAR       | PLURAL       | TERMINATIONS
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. puer</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>sing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. puerī</td>
<td>puerōrum</td>
<td>plur. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. puerō</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>iī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. puerum</td>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>ōrīm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. puerō₁</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>ōs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

60. **VOCABULARY.**

gener, -eri, m., son-in-law.
liberi, -ōrum, (pl.) m., children.
socer, -eri, m., father-in-law.
vir, virī, m., man, hero.
asper, -era, -erum, rough.
liber, -era, -erum,² free.
miser, -era, -erum, poor, wretched.
puerī, general word for children.
liberī, children of free parents.
tener, -era, -erum, tender.
sextus, -a, -um, sixth.
ā (ab), prep. w. abl. by, away from.
amātur, (he, she, it) is loved.
amantur, (they) are loved.
laudātur, (he, she, it) is praised.
laudantur, (they) are praised.

61. *The farmer is praised by the queen* would be expressed in Latin thus: *Agricola ā (or ab) rēginā laudātur;* and *The queen is praised by the farmer,* thus: *Rēgīna ab (not ā) agricolā laudātur.*

Observe that in the first sentence, rēginā, and in the second, agricolā, denotes the person by whom the thing is done (the agent); also, that these words are in the ablative, and are preceded by ā or ab. The ablative thus used, together with the preposition, answers the question *by whom?* and is called the **ABLATIVE OF AGENT.**

---

₁ To translate puerō, "with, from, by a boy," as is commonly done, is wholly wrong. *With a boy* would be cum puerō; *from, or by a boy,* ā puerō. See p. 7, note 2.

² Decline the masculine of adjectives in er in this lesson like puer. The full declension is given on p. 24.
62. **Rule of Syntax.** — The agent with passive verbs is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab,—ab before vowels or h, ā or ab before consonants.

63. Read again 53 and 54, then add the proper terminations of the adjectives, and translate the following:


II. 1. By the bad father-in-law. 2. By the rough sailor. 3. By the children of the hero. 4. The free men (nom. and acc.). 5. Of the wretched sons-in-law.

2.

64. **Exercises.**


II. 1. The sons-in-law of the men are farmers. 2. Good men are praised by their friends. 3. The boy is loved by the rough sailors. 4. The sixth boy is a new one. 5. The tired children are in the farmer’s wagon. 6. The tender dove is loved by the little girl. 7. Poor slaves are not praised by their rough masters. 8. The strong man is in the poet’s garden. 9. The heroes are praised by the pupils. 10. They love the daughter of the poor sailor.

1 Adjective, preposition, noun, is often the order where, as here, the three are combined. What is the English order? 2 Omit.
CHAPTER VI. 1.
SECOND DECLENSION.

65. PARADIGM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. ager</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>sing. —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. agrī</td>
<td>agrōrum</td>
<td>ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. agrō</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. agrum</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. agrō</td>
<td>agrēs</td>
<td>ēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe that the above terminations are the same as those on page 20. Wherein does the declension of ager differ from that of puer?

66. VOCABULARY.

aper, apri, m., boar.
culter, cultri, m., knife.
faber, -bri, m., smith.
liber, -bri, m., book.
magister, -tri, m., master.
minister, -tri, m., servant.
aeger, aegra, aegrum,² sick.
niger, nigra, nigrum, black.
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,
beautiful, handsome.
ruber, rubra, rubrum, red.
septimus, -a, -um, seventh.

magister, a superior, director; hence, master of a school, etc.
dominus (43), master of a household, slaves, etc.
minister, an inferior, attendant, servant.
servus (43), a serving man, slave.

67. Most nouns in er are declined like ager, and most adjectives in er like aeger. The most important nouns and adjectives that keep the e before r in all the cases were given in the vocabulary, 60, and should now be committed to memory.

68. Decline together equus niger, bonus faber, aper asper, vir aeger.

¹ Distinguish liber, free, from liber, book. ² See p. 24.
2.

69. EXERCISES.


II. 1. The fathers-in-law are smiths. 2. The masters are loved by their pupils. 3. The man’s son-in-law is a servant. 4. The knives are pleasing to the little boy. 5. The pretty cups are liked by the boys and girls. 6. A girl gives a man a beautiful rose. 7. The sailors have many long knives. 8. The children of the master are carrying the books in their arms. 9. The smith’s son-in-law has children. 10. There is a rough boar in the farmer’s field.

70. Answer the following in Latin:—


1 What is peculiar in the order of the words? Translate as the words stand, and see what word is made emphatic by its position.
2 What case is used after est and sunt? Compare the first three sentences in I. See rule, 47.
3 See p. 19, note 1.
4 Not accusative.
### Adjectives: First and Second Declensions.

#### 71. Paradigms.

**Bonus, good.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. N.V.</td>
<td>bonus, ē</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. N.V.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Līber, free.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. N.V.</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>liberā</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>liberum</td>
<td>liberam</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberā</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. N.V.</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>liberōrum</td>
<td>liberārum</td>
<td>liberōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
<td>liberās</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aeger, sick.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. N.V.</td>
<td>aeger</td>
<td>aegra</td>
<td>aegrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>aegri</td>
<td>aegrae</td>
<td>aegri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>aegrō</td>
<td>aegrae</td>
<td>aegrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>aegrum</td>
<td>aegram</td>
<td>aegrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>aegrō</td>
<td>aegrā</td>
<td>aegrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. N.V.</td>
<td>aegri</td>
<td>aegrae</td>
<td>aegra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>aegrōrum</td>
<td>aegrārum</td>
<td>aegrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>aegrīs</td>
<td>aegrīs</td>
<td>aegrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>aegrōs</td>
<td>aegrās</td>
<td>aegra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>aegrīs</td>
<td>aegrīs</td>
<td>aegrīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER VII.

THE IRREGULAR VERB *Sum* (stems *es, fu*), *I am*.

72. Principal parts, *sum, esse, fuī*.

73. For convenience the inflection of *sum* is given in full. Directions will be given from time to time as to what parts are to be learned.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**Present Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <em>sum</em>, I am.</td>
<td><em>sumus</em>, we are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>est</em>, he (she, it) is.</td>
<td><em>sunt</em>, they are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

| 1. *erām*, I was.  | *erāmus*, we were.|
| 2. *erās*, thou wast. | *erātis*, you were.|
| 3. *erat*, he was.  | *erant*, they were.|

**Future.**

| 1. *erō*, I shall be. | *erimus*, we shall be.|
| 2. *eris*, thou wilt be. | *eritis*, you will be.|
| 3. *erit*, he will be.  | *erunt*, they will be.|

**Perfect.**

| 1. *fui*, I have been, was. | *fuiamus*, we have been, were.|
| 2. *fuisti*, thou hast been, wast. | *fuistis*, you have been, were.|
| 3. *fuit*, he has been, was.  | *fuērunt*, or *fuēre*, they have been, were.|

**Pluperfect.**

| 1. * fueram*, I had been. | *fuerāmus*, we had been.|
| 2. * fuerās*, thou hadst been. | *fuerātis*, you had been.|
| 3. * fuerat*, he had been.  | *fuerant*, they had been.|

---

1 *Sum* for *esum*.

2 Or, *you are*, as in the plural. But in translating into Latin be careful to use the singular form of the verb, if by *you* one person only is meant.

3 *Eram* for *esam*.

4 *Erō* for *esō*. 
THE VERB Sum.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.
1. fuerō, I shall have been.
2. fueris, thou wilt have been.
3. fuerit, he will have been.

PLURAL.
1. fuerimus, we shall have been.
2. fueritis, you will have been.
3. fuerint, they will have been.

SUBJUNCTIVE.¹

PRESENT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sim</td>
<td>simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sis</td>
<td>sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sit</td>
<td>sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>essēm</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēt</td>
<td>essēsent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerim</td>
<td>fuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLUSPERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fussem</td>
<td>fuissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fusśēs</td>
<td>fuissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fusset</td>
<td>fuissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>es, be thou.</td>
<td>este, be ye.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>estō, thou shalt be.</td>
<td>estōte, ye shall be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estō, he shall be.</td>
<td>suntō, they shall be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT, esse, to be.

PERFECT, fuisset, to have been.

FUTURE, futūrus esse, to be about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.

¹ No meanings can be given to the subjunctive that are not misleading. Its forms are therefore better left untranslated until its use has been illustrated. The subjunctive is treated on pp. 164–186.
CHAPTER VIII. 1.
THE VERB Sum.

74. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive.

75. EXERCISES.

II. 1. I am, we are, I was, we were, I shall be, we shall be. 2. He was, they were, he is, they are, he will be, they will be. 3. You (sing.) will be, are, were. 4. You (plur.) will be, are, were. 5. Be ye, be thou. 6. To be.

2.

From this point the vocabularies follow the exercises, and it is recommended that the pupil go through the exercises mentally, referring to the vocabularies for the meanings of words. Before writing the translations into Latin the vocabularies should be reviewed, but the task of committing to memory will then be found an easy one.

76. EXERCISES.

1 What word is better left untranslated, though needed in the Latin?
II. 1. The farmer had a wagon. 2. I shall be the man’s friend. 3. There is a large town on the island. 4. There was a red egg on the table. 5. Children were carrying the food of the men. 6. A boy gave a smith some javelins. 7. In the town are enemies of the inhabitants. 8. They were praising the words of the sturdy farmer. 9. The poet’s gifts will be pleasing to Minerva. 10. Boys, be ye strong and skilful.

3.

77.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. A girl gave a sick sailor some wine and water. 2. The wine she carried in a pretty cup. 3. He praised the maiden’s pretty cup and the ruddy wine. 4. The maiden and the sailor were inhabitants of Britain. 5. Britain is a large island, and has handsome towns.

78.

VOCABULARY.

aqua, -ae, f., water.
āra, -ae, f., altar.
arātrum, -i, n., plough.
cōnsilium, -i, n., advice, plan.
incola, -ae, m. & f., inhabitant.
inimicus, -i, m., enemy.
insula, -ae, f., island.
mēnsa, -ae, f., table.

1 Translate in two ways.
2 Omit. See p. 18, note 2.
3 See vocabulary, 52.
4 Indirect object, see 33 & 34.
5 Compare the order with that of 69. I. 10, and see the note there.
What name is given to the dative agricolis?
6 See 69. II. 6, and note.
7 See p. 19, note 1.
### THE VERB *Sum*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, goddess of wisdom.</td>
<td>oppidum, -i, n., town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōnus, -a, -um, adj., ninth.</td>
<td>rāna, -ae, f., frog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octāvus, -a, -um, adj., eighth.</td>
<td>somnus, -i, m., sleep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oculus, -i, m., eye.</td>
<td>terra, -ae, f., earth, land.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbum, -i, n., word.</td>
<td>amābat, (he she it) was loving, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dabat, (he, she, it) was giving, gave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habēbat, (he, she, it) was having, had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudābat, (he, she, it) was praising, praised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portābat, (he, she, it) was carrying, carried.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābant, they were loving, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dabant, they were giving, gave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habēbant, they were having, had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudābant, they were praising, praised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portābant, they were carrying, carried.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

79. Nouns in *ius* and *iun* contract the genitive ending *i* to *i*: cōnsili. *Filiius* (*son*) and *genius* (*guardian deity*), and proper nouns in *ius*, drop the *e* of the vocative: *filē*, *Mercuri*, *Mercury*. But the word is accented as if the longer form were used.

### 4.

### COLLOQUIUM.

Nōnne aquam in pōculō habet faber?

Minimē. Faber in pōculō habet novum vīnum.

*no*

Dēsideratne Galba somnum grātum?

*wishes*

Certē, nam hodiē est Galba dēfessus.

*certainly for to-day*

Ubi est amīcus agricolae pigri?

*lazy*

Est in oppidō, nam nōn amābat amīcī cōnsiliūm.

*tools*

Ubi sunt arma agricolārum validōrum?

Agricolārum equī, carrī, arātra sunt in agrō.
CHAPTER IX. 1.

THE VERB Sum.


82. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fuit, fuerat, fuerit. 2. Fuérunt, fuerant, fuerint.
3. Fuimus, fueramus, fuerimus. 4. Fuerō, fueram, fuer.
5. Fuērās, fueris, fuistī. 6. Fuistis, fueritis, fuerātis.
7. Fuisset.

II. 1. I have been, we have been, I had been, we had been, I shall have been, we shall have been. 2. He has been, they have been, he had been, they had been, he will have been, they will have been. 3. You (sing.) will have been, had been, have been. 4. You (plur.) will have been, had been, have been. 5. To have been.

2.

83. EXERCISES.

I. 1. In Graeciā erant templā multā. 2. In Graeciā erant templā deōrum et deārum.

II. 1. They had been in the towns of the Greeks. 2. The monuments of Greece were temples and statues. 3. The statue of Minerva had a shield and spear. 4. The arms of the Greeks were shields and spears. 5. The gods had many statues in Greece. 6. The red roses will be pleasing to the
queen. 7. The man’s children are in the street. 8. He has been on the farmer’s horse. 9. The children are carried in the poet’s arms. 10. Many inhabitants of Britain have been skilful sailors.

84. VOCABULARY.

altus, -a, -um, adj., deep, high.
antiquus, -a, -um, adj., ancient.
arma, -ōrum, n. (plur.), arms.
aureus, -a, -um, adj., of gold, golden.
aurum, -i, n., gold.
dea, -ae, f., goddess. p. 8, n. 1.
decimus, -a, -um, adj., tenth.
deus, -i, m., god (262).
fluvius, -i, m., river (79).

glōria, -ae, f., glory.
Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.
Graecus, -i, m., a Greek.
hasta, -ae, f., spear.
monumentum, -i, n., monument
scūtum, -i, n., shield.
sempiternus, -a, -um, adj., everlasting.
statua, -ae, f., statue.
templum, -i, n., temple.

85. COLLOQUIUM.

Duo Puerī.

Ubi est Carolus hodiē? Nönne est in scholā?

Necesse est in fluvīō; nam habet cymbam parvam, et

likes sailing

Unde Carolō est cymba? Where did C. get a boat?

whence to Charles is a boat.

Ab avunculō, nam Carolus ab avunculō amātur.

from uncle

Quid in cymbā portat Carolus?

I don’t know doubtless luncheon for mind

habet . . .

Quid in animō habet?

Valē, bone amīce, crās patēbit.

good by to-morrow it will be open = the secret will be out.
CHAPTER X.
FIRST CONJUGATION.

86. 

Ā-VERBS.

Amō (stem amā), love.
Principal Parts:1 amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.

Indicative.

Active Voice.


I love, am loving, do love, etc.                I am loved, etc.
amō    amāmus                                   amōr    amāmur
amās    amātis                                   amāris, or-re amāminī
amāt    amānt                                    amātūr    amāntur

Imperfect.

I loved, was loving, did love, etc.             I was loved, etc.
amābam    amābāmus                                amābar    amābāmur
amābās    amābātis                                amābāris, or-re amābāminī
amābat    amābant                                  amābātur    amābantur

Future.

I shall love, etc.                              I shall be loved, etc.
amābō    amābimus                                 amābor    amābimur
amābis    amābitis                                amāberis, or-re amābimīnī
amābit    amābunt                                  amābitur    amābuntur

Perfect.

I have loved, I loved, etc.                     I have been (was) loved, etc.
amāvī    amāvimus                                  \(\text{sumus}\) \(\text{sum}\)
amāvīstī    amāvīstis                               \(\text{est}\) \(\text{es}\)
amāvit    amāv ērunt, or-re                         \(\text{est}\) \(\text{es}\)

1 Certain forms of the verb are called, from their importance, principal parts. These forms are the first person of the present indicative, showing the present stem; the present infinitive, showing the conjugation; the first person of the perfect indicative, showing the perfect stem; and the perfect participle, showing the participle stem. The neuter of the participle is given, as intransitive verbs have the perfect participle only in that gender.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Voice</th>
<th>Passive Voice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I had loved, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>I had been loved, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāv eram</td>
<td>amāv erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāv erās</td>
<td>amāv erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāv erat</td>
<td>amāv erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I shall have loved, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāv erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāv erēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāv erēt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjunctive 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am et</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am ārem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am ārēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am āret</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāv erim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāv erēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāv erēt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāv issem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāv issēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāv isset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 See p. 26, note.
FIRST CONJUGATION.

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Present.

am ā, love thou.
am āte, love ye.

Future.

am ātō, thou shalt love.
am ātō, he shall love.
am ātōte, you shall love.
am antō, they shall love.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present.

am āre, be thou loved.
am āminī, be ye loved.

Future.

am ātor, thou shalt be loved.
am ātor, he shall be loved.
am antor, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. am āre, to love.
Perf. am ābissee, to have loved.
Fut. am āturūsus esse, to be about to love.

GERUND.

G. am andō, of loving.
D. am andō, for loving.
Ac. am andum, loving.
Ab. am andō, by loving.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. am āns, -antis, loving.
Fut. am āturūs, -a, -um, about to love.

GERUNDIVE.

Pres. am ānūs, -a, -um, to be loved.
Perf. am ātus, -a, -um, having been loved.

SUPINE.

Ac. am ātūm, to love.
Ab. am ātū, to love, to be loved.

1 Observe that the Latin has neither a perfect active nor a present passive participle.

2 Gerundive, sometimes less correctly called future passive participle.
CHAPTER XI. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

87. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of amō.1

88.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. He loves, he is loved. 2. He will love, he will be loved. 3. They were loved, they were loving. 4. I shall love, I shall be loved. 5. You (sing.) love, you are loved. 6. They loved, they were loving, they will love. 7. You (plur.) are loving, you were loving, you will be loving. 8. Love (sing.), be loved. 9. To be loved, to love.

2.

89.

EXERCISES.

Laudō, praise; portō, carry; superō, conquer.


II. 1. Thou praisest, you carry, he conquers. 2. He is praised, they are carried, they will be conquered. 3. I praise, I was carrying, I shall conquer. 4. Thou art praised, thou

1 Notice how frequently the letter r marks a form as passive.

2 Where is it absent in the first three tenses?
art carried, thou art conquered.  5. Praise (thou), carry, conquer.  6. He will be conquered, he was praised, it is carried.  7. To conquer, to be carried, to be praised.  8. Do we carry? are we conquered? are we praised?  9. I am not carried, he was not conquered, they are not praised.  10. Thou wilt praise, he will be praised, they were carried.

90. Examine the following sentences:—

1. Agricola a rēgīnā laudātur, the farmer is praised by the queen.
2. Agricola rēgīnae verbīs laudātur, the farmer is praised by the words of the queen.
3. Servī gladiīs armāntur, the slaves are being armed with swords.

On the first example see 61 and 62. In the second and third, observe that there is no ā or ab used with verbīs and gladiīs.

These ablatives, verbīs and gladiīs, answer the questions by what? with what? by means of what? The ablative thus used is called the Ablative of Means or Instrument.

91. Rule of Syntax.—Means and Instrument are expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

3.

92. Exercises.


II. 1. Sing, good boy. 2. Many goddesses were loved by the Greeks. 3. The boy will put the doves to flight.

1 Before words beginning with h use ab, not ā. 2 Predicate accusative. 3 Predicate nominative. See 47.
4. The doves will be put to flight by the boy. 5. We shall invite friends and enemies. 6. Friends and enemies will be invited. 7. The Romans were not loved by the Greeks. 8. You will be summoned by a golden\(^1\) trumpet. 9. The slaves will be armed with javelins. 10. The black horse was wounded by a spear.

4.

**EXERCISES.**


II. 1. While the man was working, the boy was singing. 2. While the master is being refreshed with sleep, the servant is watching. 3. Pleasant sleep refreshes the weary boy. 4. By pleasant sleep the boy will be refreshed. 5. A high wall is being built by the townsmen.\(^6\) 6. A famous Roman was called the Sword\(^3\) of Italy. 7. They called a famous Roman the Sword\(^4\) of Italy. 8. The tired farmer is refreshed by food and sleep.\(^5\) 9. We will walk in the streets of the town, while the farmers are working\(^6\) in the fields. 10. Sing, O blind poet, while we toil.

\(^{1}\) *Golden, aureā* or *ex aurō.* The material of which a thing is made is expressed in Latin either by an adjective or by *ē* (*ex*) with the ablative. How is it in English?\(^3\)

\(^{2}\) Compare, for order, 77. I. 5, and 69. I. 10, and note.

\(^{3}\) *Sword,* in the nominative case, just as if *was* took the place of *was called.* See 92. I. 6, and note.

\(^{4}\) *Sword,* in the accusative case. See 92. I. 5, and note.

\(^{5}\) Cf. 5 and 6 in I.

\(^{6}\) Imitate 4 in I.
94. VOCABULARY.

aedificō, 1, build.
ambulō, 1, walk.
armō, 1, arm.
cantō, 1, sing.
fugō, 1, put to flight.
invitō, 1, invite, summon.
laborō, 1, work, toil.
laudō, 1, praise.
nominō, 1, name, call.
portō, 1, carry.
recreō, 1, refresh.
superō, 1, surpass, conquer.
vigilō, 1, watch.
vulnerō, 1, wound.
aqua, 1 -ae, 1, water.
aureus, -a, -um, adj., golden.
caecus, -a, -um, adj., blind.
dum, adv., while.
ē (ex), prep. w. abl., out of, from.
frigidus, -a, -um, adj., cold.
gladius, -i, m., sword (79).
Homērus, -i, m., Homer.
Italiā, -ae, 1, Italy.
murus, -i, m., wall.
opidānus, -i, m., townsman.
piger, -gra, -grum, adj., lazy.
Rōmā, -ae, 1, Rome.
Rōmānus, -i, m., a Roman.

95. COLLOQUIUM.

PATER ET FILIOLUS.
Father and little son.

P. Quae, mi filioli, in pēnsō hodiernō tractābantur?
what my little son lesson to-day's treat or discuss

F. Tractābantur cāsus ablātīvus atque verbum amō.

P. Quid significat Anglicē verbum amō?

F. Amō significat "love."

P. Dē ablātīvō quoque mihi nārrā.
about also me tell

F. Rēgulam dē ablātīvō tibi nārrābō.

P. Rēgulamne tibi dābat magister?

F. Certē, rēgulam dē ablātīvō īnstrumēntī. Cum ablā-
tīvō īnstrumēntī nunquam pōnitur praepositiō; ante ablāti-
vum agentīs semper pōnitur praepositiō ā vel ab.
of agent always or

P. Optimē, mi puer; tibi erit mālum rubrum.
well done apple

1 Words are sometimes purposely repeated in the vocabularies.
CHAPTER XII. 1.
FIRST CONJUGATION.

96. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of amō.

97. The compound tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb sum with the perfect passive participle. The participle (declined like bonus) agrees in gender and number with the subject: amāta est, she was loved; amātī sunt, they were loved.

98. EXERCISES.
I. 1. Amāvit, amāverat, amāverit. 2. Amātus est, amātus erat, amātus erit. 3. Amāverunt, amāverant, amāverint.

II. 1. You loved, you have been loved. 2. You had loved, you had been loved. 3. You will have loved, you will have been loved. 4. He has loved, he has been loved. 5. We had loved, we had been loved. 6. To have been loved, to have loved.

99. EXERCISES.
I. 1. Laudātus est, portātus est, superātus est. 2. Lau-
dāvitne? portāveratne? superāveritne? 3. Portāvisī, laudāvistis, superāvit. 4. Superāverās, portāveris, laudā-
veritis. 5. Laudātī estis, portāta sunt, superātus es.
6. Nōnne laudātae sunt? nōnne portātæ estis? nōnne su-
8. Nōn laudāvimus, nōn portāverimus, nōn superāverō.

II. 1. They have carried, we have been praised, you have been conquered. 2. Have I praised? have you been carried? had they conquered? 3. We had been carried, I shall have
praised, they will have been conquered. 4. You had not carried, thou hadst not praised, thou hadst not been conquered. 5. To have been conquered, to have praised, to have carried. 6. I had praised, I had been conquered, I (fem.) had been carried. 7. Has it not been praised? will it not have been carried? have they not been conquered? 8. We (fem.) had been carried, thou wilt have praised, he conquered. 9. They praised, you carried, we conquered. 10. I was praised, thou wast conquered, it was carried.

3

100. In Latin, the words for my, thy, your, our, his, her, its, and their, are very often omitted when they are not emphatic. Accordingly, in the exercises to be turned into Latin, for the present, leave these words untranslated.

101. EXERCISES.


Read again the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36.

II. 1. An eagle changed the fortune of the battle. 2. We shall witness a battle on the broad river. 3. Many good men will have been blamed by their enemies. 4. The boys will have recited to their master. 5. The land in Italy has been ploughed with iron ploughs. 6. The master freed his pupils from their hard tasks (abl.). 7. The goddess Minerva has been praised by many poets. 8. The victories of famous men have been sung by the poets. 9. The tyrant armed a great number of slaves with swords.
VOCABULARY.

arō, 1, plough.
liberō, 1, free, set free.
mütō, 1, change.
recitō, 1, read aloud, recite.
spectō, 1, look at, witness.
superō, 1, surpass, conquer.
vituperō, 1, blame, censure.
ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., excellent.

ferreus, -a, -um, adj., of iron, iron
fortūna, -ae, f., fortune.
numerus, -i, m., number.
pūgna, -ae, f., battle.
scūtum, -i, n., shield.
terra, -ae, f., earth, land.
tyrrannus, -i, m., tyrant.
victūria, -ae, f., victory.

CHAPTER XIII.

103. The stem ends in a consonant or in i.

104. Consonant stems are named, according to their final letter, mute stems, liquid stems, sibilant stems. See 3.

MUTE STEMS.

PARADIGMS.

Prīnceps, m., chief.
Rēx, m., king.
Jūdex, m., judge.
Aetās, f., age.
Caput, n., head.
Stem prīncip-
St. rēg-
St. jūdūc-
St. aetāt-
St. capit-

SINGULAR.

N.V. prīnceps rēx jūdēx aetās caput
G. prīncipīs rēgis jūdicīs aetātīs capitis
D. prīncipī rēgī jūdicī aetātī capiī
Ac. prīncipem rēgēm jūdicem aetātem caput
Ab. prīncipe rēge jūdice aetātē capite

PLURAL.

N.V. prīnceptēs rēgēs jūdicēs aetātēs capita
G. prīncipum rēgum jūdicum aetātum capitum
D. prīncipibus rēgibus jūdicibus aetātibus capitibus
Ac. prīnceptēs rēgēs jūdicēs aetātēs capita
Ab. prīncipibus rēgibus jūdicibus aetātibus capitibus
### Third Declension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N. V.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>A. C.</th>
<th>A. B.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg.</td>
<td>pēs</td>
<td>pedī</td>
<td>pedūm</td>
<td>pedēm</td>
<td>pedibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>pedēs</td>
<td>pedībus</td>
<td>pedem</td>
<td>pedēbus</td>
<td>pedibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Terminations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MASC. &amp; FEM.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. V.</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>ī</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. C.</td>
<td>em</td>
<td>ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. B.</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**106.** Observe that the vowel before the final consonant of the stem is not always the same in the nominative as in the other cases.

**107.** Consonant stems may be found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular. But there are some exceptions.

**108.** Decline grex, poēma, servitūs. Decline together lapis asper, fidus comēs, and mīlēs aeger. For the nouns, see **110.**

### Exercises


**II.** 1. The king has changed the fortune of the war. 2. The fortune of the war was changed by the king. 3. The

---

1. *from care*. See **101. II. 6.**  
2. The subject.
soldiers will free the king. 4. The king will be freed by the soldiers. 5. The king had armed the soldiers with shields and spears. 6. Daedalus fitted wings to his son. 7. Wings were fitted to his son by Daedalus. 8. We shall read aloud the poems of Homer. 9. The girl sings for the weary soldier and is praised.

110. VOCABULARY.
comēs, -itis, m. & f., companion.
equeēs, -itis, m., horseman.
grexs, gregis, m., flock, herd.
lapis, -idis, m., stone.
mileēs, -itis, m., soldier.
pēs, pēdis, m., foot.
pōēma, -ātis, n., poem.
rēx, rēgis, m., king.

servitūs, -ātis, f., slavery.
voluptūs, -ātis, f., pleasure.
aptō, 1, fit.
Daedalus, -i, m., Daedalus, builder of the Labyrinth.
filius, -i, m., son (79).
vicinus, -a, -um, adj., neighboring.

3. COLOQUIUM.
FRATER ET SORORCULA.
brother little sister

S. Quid hodie narrāvit magister in scholā?
to-day school

F. Narrāvit dē Ícarō, Daedali filió.

S. Mihi quoque dē Ícarō Latīnē nārrā. Fuitne Ícarus puer malus?

F. Minimē malus sed miserrimus. Habēbat ālās; ālās cērā
not unfortunate wings wax
aptāverat Daedalus; Ícarus evolāvit et cērā sole liquefacta
flew away sun was melted

est. Tum ...
then

S. Tum ... quid?

F. Mihi nōn sunt verba Latīna. Itaque haesitō.
words that is why hesitate

S. Ergō nārrā Anglicē. Nam lingvam Anglicam intellegō.
well, then language understand

F. Minimē. Latīnē tibi nārrō, nōn Anglicē.
by no means
CHAPTER XIV.
SECOND CONJUGATION.

112. E-VERBS.

Moneō (stem monē), advise.
Principal Parts: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.

ACTIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I advise, etc.</th>
<th>Present.</th>
<th>I am advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mon eō</td>
<td>mon ēmus</td>
<td>mon eor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon ēs</td>
<td>mon ētis</td>
<td>mon ēris, or-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon ēt</td>
<td>mon ent</td>
<td>mon ētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was advising, etc.</th>
<th>I was advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mon ēbam</td>
<td>mon ēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon ēbās</td>
<td>mon ēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon ēbat</td>
<td>mon ēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall advise, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mon ēbō</td>
<td>mon ēbīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon ēbis</td>
<td>mon ēbitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon ēbit</td>
<td>mon ēbunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have advised, I advised, etc.</th>
<th>I have been (was) advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>monuimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistī</td>
<td>monuistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monu ērunt, or-re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had advised, etc.</th>
<th>I had been advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monu eram</td>
<td>monu ērāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monu erās</td>
<td>monu ērātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monu erat</td>
<td>monu ērant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Active.

#### Future Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monu erō</th>
<th>Monu erīmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monu erīs</td>
<td>Monu erītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monu erit</td>
<td>Monu erint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Passive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall have been advised, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Erō</th>
<th>Erīmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Erīs</td>
<td>Erītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erit</td>
<td>Erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive.

#### Present.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mon eam</th>
<th>Mon eāmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mon eās</td>
<td>Mon eātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mon eat</td>
<td>Mon eānt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mon ērem</th>
<th>Mon ēremus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mon ērēs</td>
<td>Mon ērētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mon ēret</td>
<td>Mon ērent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monu erim</th>
<th>Monu erīmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monu erīs</td>
<td>Monu erītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monu erit</td>
<td>Monu erint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monuissem</th>
<th>Monuissemus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moniusēs</td>
<td>Moniusētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moniusset</td>
<td>Moniussent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative.

#### Present.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mon ē, advise thou.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mon ēre, be thou advised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mon ēte, advise ye.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mon ēminī, be ye advised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mon ētō, thou shalt advise.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mon ētor, thou shalt be advised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mon ētō, he shall advise.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mon ētor, he shall be advised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mon ētōte, you shall advise.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mon entor, they shall be advised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mon ento, they shall advise.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
ACTIVE.

Pres. monēre, to advise.
Perf. monuisset, to have advised.
Fut. monēs esse, to be about to advise.

INFINITIVE.

monēri, to be advised.
monitus esse, to have been advised.
monitus iri, to be about to be advised.

PASSIVE.

PARTICIPE.

Pres. monēns, -entis, advising.
Fut. monērus, -a, -um, about to advise.

GERUND.

G. monendī, of advising.
D. monendō, for advising.
Ac. monendum, advising.
Ab. monendō, by advising.

GERUND.

D. monendō, for advising.
Ac. monendum, advising.
Ab. monendō, by advising.

SUPINE.

Ac. monitum, to advise.
Ab. monitū, to advise, to be advised.

CHAPTER XV. 1.
SECOND CONJUGATION.

113. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of moneō.

114. EXERCISES.


II. 1. You are advising, you will be advised, you were advised. 2. Advise ye, be ye advised. 3. We do advise,
we are advising, we shall be advising. 4. We were advising, we were advised. 5. They are advised, they advised, they were advising. 6. They will advise, they will be advised.

2.

115. EXERCISES.

Habeō, have, or hold; dēleō,1 destroy; terrēō, frighten.


II. 1. We are held, they will be destroyed, he was frightened.—2. I frighten, thou hast (you have), he destroys. 3. To have, to destroy, to be frightened. —4. Is he frightened? are they destroyed? were you held? 5. Destroy (thou), have (ye), frighten (ye). —6. Have we not? does he not frighten? did they not destroy? 7. You will be frightened, it is held, we were frightened. 8. I was holding, he was destroying, you were frightening. 9. I shall destroy, we shall frighten, they have.

3.

116. EXERCISES.

Before translating the following exercises, review the tables of declensions and terminations, pp. 41 and 42.

I. 1. Poenam merēbis, si memoriam nōn exercēbis.3

1 For principal parts of dēleō, see vocabulary, 119.
2 The present, which denotes continued action, means it is being (destroyed); the imperfect, he was being (frightened).
3 Translate as if it were the present tense; but in Latin the future is necessary, because future time is meant. Cf. 93. I. 4. Observe the difference between the Latin and English idioms.
SECOND CONJUGATION.


II. 1. The tyrant is restrained. 2. The water of the river was increased. 3. The leader will have a statue. 4. The faithful comrade advises his friend. 5. The friend is advised by his faithful companion. 6. Lazy slaves fear a hard master. 7. A hard master is feared by lazy slaves. 8. Italy is the land of famous poets. 9. The soldiers will not be terrified by dangers. 10. The boy remembered the master’s words.

117. Malōs (I. 8), bad men, and multa (I. 10), many things, are examples of the frequent use in Latin of an adjective without a noun. Compare, in English, the good, the wise.

4.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. In ancient states there were many slaves. 2. Why had the ancient Romans many slaves? 3. We saw the great number of horsemen in the road and were frightened. 4. Roman boys were often taught by Greek slaves. 5. Greek slaves often taught Roman boys. 6. The horsemen were trained by the king’s son. 7. Many horses and horsemen are seen in the town. 8. The chief will deserve a great victory.

1 Rēx, in apposition with Cyrus. See 157. 2 names.
SECOND CONJUGATION.

119.

cerceō, 2, -uī, -itum, check, restrain.
exerceō, 2, -uī, -itum, train, exercise.
habeō, 2, -uī, -itum, have, hold.
mercēō, 2, -uī, -itum, deserve, merit.
prohibēō, 2, -uī, -itum, prevent, keep off.
terreō, 2, -uī, -itum, frighten.
timeō, 2, -uī, —, fear.

augeō, 2, auxī, auctum, increase.
dēlecō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum, destroy.
doceō, 2, -uī, doctum, teach.
teneō, 2, -uī, tentum, keep, hold.
video, 2, vidi, visum, see; passive, seem.
antiquus, -a, -um, adj., old, ancient.
civitās, -ātis, r., state.
cūr, adv., why?
Cyrrhus, -i, m., Cyrus.
dux, ducis, m. & r., leader, general.
 fidus, -a, -um, adj., faithful.
memoria, -ae, r., memory.
memoriā teneō, remember.
periculum, -i, n., danger.
poena, -ae, r., punishment.
quid, interrog. pron., what?
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman (94).
saepe, adv., often.
si, conj., if.
studium, -i, n., zeal, study.
templum, -i, n., temple.

CHAPTER XVI. 1.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

120. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of moneō.

121.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. You have advised, you had advised, you will have advised. 2. They have been advised, they had been advised.

1 Auxī for aug-sī. See p. 1, n. 2.
2 Only fleō, weep, neō, spin, and the compounds of the obsolete pieō, fill, are conjugated like dēlecō, with the perfect in ēvi.
3 Observe, not docitum.
4 Observe, not tenitum.
5 Vidi. Perfect stem formed by lengthening the vowel of the present stem, vīd to vīd.
they will have been advised. 3. I had advised, I had been advised. 4. He has advised, he has been advised. 5. We have advised, we have been advised. 6. To have been advised, to have advised.

2.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. They have had, they have frightened, they have destroyed. 2. I had had, I had been frightened, I had destroyed. 3. Have you had? had he destroyed? has he frightened? 4. We had not destroyed, they (fem.) had not been frightened, you had not destroyed. 5. We have had, we shall have destroyed, we had been frightened. 6. To have destroyed, to have been held, to have been frightened. 7. Have you been frightened? had they (neut.) been destroyed? has she had? 8. I have destroyed, I have not had, I shall not have been frightened. 9. They will have had, they will have been frightened, they (neut.) will have been destroyed. 10. Have you not had? did they not destroy? have you (fem.) not been frightened?

3.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rēx Rōmam obsēderat. 2. Rōma ā rēge obsēssa erat. 3. Scriba cum (with) rēge sedēbat. 4. Īra feroctum (fierce) animum virī mōvit. 5. Rēguli conjugi et liberīs
SECOND CONJUGATION.  51

alimenta praebuerunt Römānī.  6. Captūvī retentī sunt.

II.  1. The town was besieged by the general.  2. Why
did the general besiege the town?  3. The king is sitting with
his clerk.  4. The minds of the men were moved with
anger.  5. Regulus was retained (as) a prisoner.  6. Regulus
deserved great glory.  7. The new moon has been seen.
8. The commander’s daughter was a prisoner.  9. We wept
because we were prisoners.  10. The town had been besieged
by Pyrrhus.

4.

124.

EXERCISES.

I.  1. Mīlitibus māgna præmia ā rēge præbita sunt.
2. Mīlitēs timuērunt quia elephantōs vidērunt.  3. Numerum
verbōrum auximus.  4. Caesar mīlitēs in oppidō retinuerat.
5. Jūdicium bonōrum memoria nunquam dēlēbitur.  6. Multa
Rōmānōrum monumenta dēlēta sunt.  7. Dux castra ab
oppidō mōverat.  8. Dominus servōs in servitūte tenuit.
9. Multa verba in memorìa mānsērunt.  10. Mīlitis conjunx
in Minervae templō sedēbat.

II.  1. The king furnished food for his weary soldiers.
2. Elephants had frightened the horses of the Romans.
3. Have you increased the number of your friends?
4. Cæsar’s soldiers were besieged in the town.  5. The
sword of the tyrant has restrained the judge.  6. War has
destroyed many monuments of great men.  7. The camp
had been moved away from the town.  8. We weep if our
children are held in slavery.  9. Shall you remain in Italy?

1 Not passive.
2 Predicate nomin.; see 47.
3 When a noun is limited both by an adjective and a genitive,
the order often is: adjective, genitive, noun. Cf. 118. I. 2 and 8.
125. VOCABULARY.

fleō, 2, flēvi, flētum, weep, bewail.
maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsum, remain, await.
moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtum, move.
ob-sidcō, 2, -sēdi, -sēssum, besiege.
praebēō, 2, -uī, -itum, furnish.
re-tineō, 2, -tinui, -tentum, keep back, retain.
sedcō, 2, sēdi, sēssum, sit.
alimentum, -i, n., food, support.
animus, -i, m., mind.
Caesar, -aris, m., Casar. (134.)
captivus, 2, -i, m., prisoner, captive.
castra, -ōrum, (pl.) n., camp.
conjunx, conjugis, f., wife.
elephantus, -i, m., elephant.
ira, -ae, f., anger.
lūna, -ae, f., moon.
novus, -a, -um, adj., new.
nunquam, adv., never.
praecium, -i, n., reward.
Pyrrhus, -i, m., Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.
qua, conj., because.
Rēgulus, -i, m., Regulus, a Roman.
scriba, -ae, m., clerk. (11. 1.)

5.

126. COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Latīnē mihi interrogantī respondē si possis. Quae to me asking answer you can what
insula Graeciae est parva quidem sed clāra?
D. Admodum clāra est Ithaca īnsula, ubi habītābat Ulixēs.
very where Ulysses
P. Rēctē, mī puer, Ulixēs Ithacaē rēx fuit et dux in bellō right leader
ēgregius. Quis cantāvit dē Ulixē ēgregiō?
D. Homērus, poēta caecus, qui antem Ulixem nunquam blind who however never
viderat.
P. Tenēsne memoriā nōmen fidī servi Ulixis?
D. Servus Ulixīs fidus erat Eumaeus.

1 See p. 49, note 5.  2 Also captīva, -ae, f.
CHAPTER XVII. 1.

REVIEW.

127. EXERCISES.


II. 1. We shall see the flocks in the fields. 2. The king was not frightened by the elephant. 3. Horses are frightened by elephants. 4. The townsmen were sitting on the wall. 5. The prisoners were wounded by the soldiers with their swords. 6. My boy, what are you looking at? 7. Do you not see the horsemen’s swords? 8. Do you remember the poems of the Roman poet? 9. The king’s sons were finding fault with fortune. 10. Why are the townsmen armed with swords?

128. Examine the two following groups of sentences:—

1. Iter ab Arare Helvētīī āverterant, the Helvetii had turned their course from the Arar.
2. Arāneās dēsciam dē pariete, I will brush down the cobwebs from the wall.
3. Hannibal ex Ítaliā excēssit, Hannibal withdrew from Italy.

1. Nōs cūrā liberābis, you will free us from care.
2. Oculīs sē privāvit, he deprived himself of his sight (eyes).
3. Homo cibō caret, the man is in want of food.

129. The verbs have the general idea of separation; and in the first group the ablative with a preposition, in the second the ablative

1 Vocative singular of mens, my.
alone, answers the question from what? of what? Observe further, that the verbs of the first group are compounds of ā, de, ex, and the "separation" is literal, or physical; in the second group the "separation" is figurative, or less literal.

130. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Separation is expressed by the ablative with ā (ab), de, ex (ex), in connection with verbs compounded with these prepositions, or by the ablative alone with simple verbs meaning to set free, deprive, or want.

2. EXERCISES.


Before translating the following sentences, read over the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36, and consider what expressions are equivalent to the Latin ablative of agent with ā or ab, the ablative of means, and the ablative of separation.

II. 1: They deprived the sick man of water. 2. The state was freed from the tyrant by Brutus. 3. The Italians were taught by Saturn. 4. The leader adorned the town with statues. 5. The horsemen are in want of swords and horses. 6. Corinth was robbed of many statues by a Roman general. 7. The goddess will keep off the Romans

---

1 With other verbs than those indicated in 129 and 130, of similar meaning, the preposition is sometimes used and sometimes omitted.

2 Observe the two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing, with doceō.
from her temple. 8. The town was destroyed by the plans of the general. 9. Will not the Romans be kept off from the temple? 10. They thrust forth the leaders from the town. 11. The leaders are hustled out of town.

132. Vocabulary.

agrī cultūra,-ae, r., agriculture.
avārus,-a,-um, adj., greedy.
arceō, 2, -ui, -tum, keep off.
Brūtus,-i, m., Brucius, a Roman.
carcō, 2, -ui, -itum, want, lack.
causa,-ae, r., cause.
Corinthus,-i, r., Corinth (11.4).
custōs,-ōdis, m. & r., keeper.
Ēpirus,-i, r., Epirus (11.4).
exturbō, 1, thrust out.
Italus,-i, m., an Italian.
Liber,-eri, m., Bacchus, god of wine.
meus,-a,-um, poss. adj., my, mine.
ōrnō, 1, adorn.
privō, 1, deprive. [agriculture.
Sāturnus,-i, m., Saturn, god of
spoliō, 1, rob, despoil.
tūs,-a,-um, poss. adj., thy, your

3.

133. Colloquium.

Praeceptor et Discipulus.

P. Dīc mihi, puer, elephantōsne aliiquidō vidistī?
D. Certē, praecceptor, elephantōs mágnōs et parvōs vidī.
P. In agrīsne?
D. Minimē vērō; in circō et interdum in viās.
P. Quis rēx clārus elephantōrum auxiliō pūgnābat?
D. Pyrrhus, rēx Ēpirī, ita pūgnābat.
P. Nōnne elephantī equōs Rōmānōrum terrēbant?
D. Terrēbant. Militēs quoque terrēbantur.
P. Superāvitne Pyrrhus Rōmānōs?
D. Saepe superāvit.
P. Quibus armīs pūgnant elephantī?
D. Dentibus, proboscide, pedibus, capite pūgnant.
## THIRD DECLENSION.

### CHAPTER XVIII. 1.

#### THIRD DECLENSION.

**LIQUID STEMS.**

134. **PARADIGMS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. V.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>A. C.</th>
<th>A. B.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cōnsul, m., consul.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pater, m., father.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pāstor, m., shepherd.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Leō, m., lion.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. cōnsul-</td>
<td>St. patr-</td>
<td>St. pāstōr-</td>
<td>St. leōn-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SINGULAR.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. V.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>A. C.</th>
<th>A. B.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnsul</td>
<td>cōnsulīs</td>
<td>cōnsulī</td>
<td>cōnsulēm</td>
<td>cōnsule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēs</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>ēm</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. V.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>A. C.</th>
<th>A. B.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>cōnsulum</td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēs</td>
<td>um</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>sēs</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Imāgō, p., image.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. V.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>A. C.</th>
<th>A. B.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imāgō</td>
<td>imāginīs</td>
<td>imāginī</td>
<td>imāginēm</td>
<td>imāginē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmen</td>
<td>nōminis</td>
<td>nōmini</td>
<td>nōmen</td>
<td>nōmine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nōmen, n., name.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. V.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>A. C.</th>
<th>A. B.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imāgō</td>
<td>imāginīs</td>
<td>imāginī</td>
<td>imāginēm</td>
<td>imāginē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmen</td>
<td>nōminis</td>
<td>nōmini</td>
<td>nōmen</td>
<td>nōmine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TERMINATIONS.**

**MASC. & FEM.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>em</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NEUTER.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
135. Examine the following: —
1. Hieme et aestâte, in winter and summer.
2. Sólis occásū,¹ at the setting of the sun.
4. Hīs vígintī annīs, within these twenty years.

It will be seen that the above phrases are expressions of time, and answer the question when? or, within what time?

136. Rule of Syntax. — Time when is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; time within which, by the ablative alone, or by the ablative with in.

2.

137. Exercises.

II. 1. Europe has no⁴ lions. 2. A slave had a great lion. 3. The name of the slave was Androclus. 4. There are many lions in Africa. 5. The friend of my brothers has seen a lion. 6. A lion has been seen by my father and my brother. 7. The shouts of the soldiers scared the men in the town. 8. The defenders of the town were scared by the shouts of the men. 9. Why are many men miserable in time⁵ of war? 10. Do we not see by the sun’s light? 11. At daybreak they saw Hannibal’s horsemen.

¹ Ablative of the fourth declension. See 245. ² All. ³ Children. See 60. ⁴ Not. ⁵ Tempore.
138. VOCABULARY.

clāmor, -ōris, m., shout.
défensor, -ōris, m., defender.
fortitūdō, -inis, f., bravery.
frāter, -tris, m., brother.
Hannibal, -ālis, m., Hannibal, a Carthaginian general.
homo, -inis, m., man.
imperātor, -ōris, m., general.
lūmen, -inis, n., light.
sōl, sōlis, m. (no gen. pl.), sun.
terror, -ōris, m., terror.
timor, -ōris, m., fear.

Āfrica, -ae, f., Africa.
Androclus, -i, m., Androclus.
annus, -i, m., year.
creō, 1, elect, choose.
Europa, -ae, f., Europe.
Horātius, -i, m., Horace, a Roman poet (79).
impleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum, f., fill.
juvenātus, -ūtis, f., youth.
semper, adv., always.
voluptās, -ātis, f., pleasure.

homo, man, as distinguished from lower animals; general word for man, mankind.
vir (60), man, as distinguished from woman; man in an honorable sense, hero.

3.

139. COLLOQUIUM.

MAGISTER ET DISCIPULUS.

M. Quae, mi puer, sunt in pēnsō hodiernō?

D. Multa sunt in pēnsō, ut nōmina, adjectīva, dēclīnā-
tiōnēs, rēgulae.

M. Quot genera sunt nōminibus Latinīs?

D. Genera sunt tria: masculīnum, fēminīnum, neutrum.

M. Dē quibus nōminibus est rēgula prīma?

D. Prīma rēgula est dē nōminibus generis masculīnī.

Secunda rēgula est dē nōminibus generis fēminīnī.

M. Verbōrum quot sunt conjugātiōnēs?

D. Quattuor sunt conjugātiōnēs, dēclīnātiōnēs autem quīnque.

what things to-day's many things as nouns declensions
how many genders
three what

dē nōminibus generis masculīnī. dē nōminibus generis fēminīnī.

verb how many

quīnque. but
CHAPTER XIX. 1.
THIRD DECLENSION.
SIBILANT STEMS.\(^1\)

140. PARADIGMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mōs, m.,</th>
<th>Jūs, n.,</th>
<th>Opus, n.,</th>
<th>Corpus, n.,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>custom.</td>
<td>right.</td>
<td>work.</td>
<td>body.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. mōs-</td>
<td>St. jūs-</td>
<td>St. opes-</td>
<td>St. corporis-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

 **SINGULAR.**

| N.V. mōs | jūs | opus | corpus |
| G. mōris | jūris | operis | corporis |
| D. mōrī | jūrī | operī | corporī |
| Ac. mōrem | jūs | opus | corpus |
| Ab. mōre | jūre | operē | corporē |

 **PLURAL.**

| N.V. mōrēs | jūra | opera | corpora |
| G. mōrum | jūrum | operum | corporum |
| D. mōribus | jūribus | operibus | corporibus |
| Ac. mōrēs | jūra | opera | corpora |
| Ab. mōribus | jūribus | operibus | corporibus |

141. ADJECTIVE.

**Vetus, old.** Stem vetēs-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
<td>veterum</td>
<td>veterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. veterī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. veterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. veterē</td>
<td>vetere</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

142. The above were originally sibilant stems, the s having been changed to r between two vowels. Compare eram for esam, erō for esō, p. 25. But for practical purposes they may be regarded as stems in r.

---

\(^1\) For table of terminations, see 134.
EXERCISES.


II. 1. The statue of Minerva has been seen. 2. The statue of Minerva had often been praised. 3. The works of the Greeks were pleasing to the Romans. 4. Our pleasures have been increased by work and zeal. 5. What were seen in the temples of Greece? 6. In ancient times men saw statues of gods and goddesses. 7. Statues of gods and goddesses were seen by men in ancient times.

2.

144. Examine the following:—

1. Cum virtūte vīxit, he lived with virtue (virtuously).
2. Agricola agrum cum cūrā arat, the farmer ploughs his field with care (carefully).
3. Agricola agrum māgnā cum cūrā arat, the farmer ploughs his field with great care.
4. Summā vī proelium commīsērunt, they joined battle with the greatest violence.

Manner is usually expressed by adverbs: bene, well; liberē, freely. So the phrases cum virtūte, cum cūrā, māgnā cum cūrā, and summā vī, plainly denote manner,—how a thing is done,—like adverbs of manner.

145. Rule of Syntax.—Manner is sometimes expressed by the ablative with cum; but if the ablative has an adjective, cum is often omitted.

1 Read again explanations and rule, p. 30. 2 Quae = what things.
146. **EXERCISES.**


II. 1. They look at the lion with great fear.  2. If he blames (is blaming) the boy angrily, he deserves punishment.  3. Dāedalus had fitted wings to Icarus with care.  4. They remember the words of the good judge with joy.  5. The words of the good judge will be carefully remembered.  6. How many works of the Romans time has not destroyed!

147. **VOCABULARY.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cerēs, -eris, r.</td>
<td>Ceres, goddess of agriculture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flōs, flōris, m.</td>
<td>flower.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulvis, -eris, m.</td>
<td>dust.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempus, -oris, n.</td>
<td>time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aestās, -ātis, r.</td>
<td>summer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum, prep. w. abl.</td>
<td>with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūra, -ae, r.</td>
<td>care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaudium, -i, n.</td>
<td>joy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Icarus, -i, m.</td>
<td>Icarus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ira, -ae, r.</td>
<td>anger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libenter, adv.</td>
<td>gladly, with pleasure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molestus, -a, -um, adj.</td>
<td>troublesome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quam, adv.</td>
<td>how, than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacer, -era, -erum, adj.</td>
<td>sacred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sicilia, -ae, r.</td>
<td>Sicily.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **COLOQUIUM.**

**Duo Puerī.**

Hodiē dūrum pēnum habuī.

Studuistīne cum cūrā et diligentīā?

Did you study diligence

Certē cum diligentīā, nōn cum voluptāte studuī.

---

1 Notice that *in the fields* = *in agrīs*; *in the time* = *tempore.*

2 See p. 47, note 3.

3 Why would it be wrong to write *ā tempore?*

4 Compare **144. 1.**
Cūr nōn cum volúptāte studuísti? Eratne magister mōrōsus an pēnsum longum?

Mehercule! longum erat pēnsum neque memoriā tenēbam. Truly and not

Aspice. Nōnne vidēs multa vocábulā in vocábulario et ver-

bum mōneō et déclínātiōnis tertiae substantīva et adjectīva?

Heu amīcum miserum, quam studēs!

STEMS IN i.

149.

PARADIGMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hostis, m. &amp; f., enemy.</th>
<th>Nūbēs, r., cloud.</th>
<th>Turris, r., tower.</th>
<th>Īgnis, m., fire.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>St. hosti-</td>
<td>St. nūbi-</td>
<td>St. turri-</td>
<td>St. īgni-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V. hostis</th>
<th>nūbēs</th>
<th>turris</th>
<th>īgnis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. hostis</td>
<td>nūbis</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>īgnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. hostī</td>
<td>nūbī</td>
<td>turri</td>
<td>īgnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. hostem</td>
<td>nūbem</td>
<td>turrim,em</td>
<td>īgnem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. hoste</td>
<td>nūbe</td>
<td>turri, e</td>
<td>īgnī, e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V. hostēs</th>
<th>nūbēs</th>
<th>turrēs</th>
<th>īgnēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. hostium</td>
<td>nūbium</td>
<td>turrium</td>
<td>īgnium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. hostibus</td>
<td>nūbibus</td>
<td>turribus</td>
<td>īgnibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. hostēs, īs</td>
<td>nūbēs, īs</td>
<td>turrēs, īs</td>
<td>īgnēs, īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. hostibus</td>
<td>nūbibus</td>
<td>turribus</td>
<td>īgnibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THIRD DECLENSION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal, n., animal.</th>
<th>Mare, n., sea.</th>
<th>Calcar, n., spur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>St. animāli-</td>
<td>St. mari-</td>
<td>St. calcāri-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TERMINATIONS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>masc. &amp; fem.</th>
<th>sing.</th>
<th>plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. animal</td>
<td>is, ēs</td>
<td>ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. animālis</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. animālī</td>
<td>ī</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. animal</td>
<td>em, im</td>
<td>ēs, īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. animālī</td>
<td>e, ī</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>neuter.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. animālia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. animālium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. animālibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. animālia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. animālibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

150. ADJECTIVES.

**Ācer, keen, eager.** St. ācri-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>masc.</th>
<th>fem.</th>
<th>neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. ācer</td>
<td>ācrīs</td>
<td>ācre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ācrīs</td>
<td>ācrīs</td>
<td>ācrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ācrem</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>masc.</th>
<th>fem.</th>
<th>neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ācrēum</td>
<td>ācrēum</td>
<td>ācrēum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ācrēbus</td>
<td>ācrēbus</td>
<td>ācrēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ācrēs, īs</td>
<td>ācrēs, īs</td>
<td>ācrēa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ācrēbus</td>
<td>ācrēbus</td>
<td>ācrēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Levis, light, nimble.** St. levi-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>masc. &amp; f.</th>
<th>neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. levis</td>
<td>leve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. levis</td>
<td>levis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. levī</td>
<td>levī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. levem</td>
<td>leve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. levī</td>
<td>levī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>masc. &amp; f.</th>
<th>neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. levēs</td>
<td>levēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. levium</td>
<td>levium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. levibus</td>
<td>levibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. levēs, īs</td>
<td>levēs, īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. levibus</td>
<td>levibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THIRD DECLENSION.

Memor, mindful. St. memori-

Singular.


N. V. memor memor memorés
G. memoris memoris memorum
D. memorī memorī memoribus
Ac. memorēm memor memorés, ēs
Ab. memorī memorī memoribus

151. An inspection of the tables shows:—
1. That the ī of the stem is sometimes lost, and sometimes
changed to e. It appears in the terminations im, ēs (acc. plur.),
i (abl. sing.), ia, and iūm.
2. That the ablative singular has in some nouns ī, in some e,
and in some ē or e; in adjectives, always ī.
3. That the genitive plural has iūm, and the nominative and
accusative plural neuter īa. Compare these endings with the
nominative and genitive plural of consonant stems (105, 134, 140).
4. Memor has um in the genitive plural, masculine and feminine.
It has no neuter plural. Like memor decline vigil, watchful,
which has neuter plural vigilia, vigilium, etc.

152. To stems in ī belong:—
1. Nouns in īs and ēs not increasing in the genitive.¹
2. Neuters in ē, al, and ar.
3. Adjectives of two terminations.
4. Adjectives of the third declension of three terminations.

153. Nouns in ēs (gen. īs) are declined like nūbēs. Most
nouns in īs are declined like hostis. Canis, dog, has genitive
plural canum.

154. The principal nouns declined like turris are: clāvis,
key; nāvis, ship; puppis, stern of a ship; secūris, axe.
Like īgnis are: amnis, river; anguis, snake; avis, bird;
civis, citizen; clāssis, fleet; collis, hill; finis, end; orbis, circle;
postis, post. Sītis, thirst, has acc. in -im, abl. in -ī.

¹ That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative.
155. Adjectives declined like ācer are called adjectives of three terminations; those declined like levis, adjectives of two terminations; while those declined like vetus (141), audāx and prūdēns (164), are called adjectives of one termination.

156. Decline together nāvis longa, ship of war; vallis profunda, deep valley; Alpēs altae, high Alps. See 161.

2.

157. Paradigm illustrating opposition:—

N.V. Cicerō cōnsul, Cicero, the consul.
G. Cicerōnis cōnsulis, of Cicero, the consul.
D. Cicerōni cōnsulī, to or for Cicero, the consul.
Ac. Cicerōnem cōnsulem, Cicero, the consul.
Ab. ā Cicerōne cōnsule, by Cicero, the consul.

158. Rule of Syntax.—An appositive is in the same case as the noun or pronoun which it qualifies.

159.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. In the tower there were many men. 2. The towers of the ships were high. 3. From the high tower we saw the broad sea. 4. The broad sea was seen by men in the high tower. 5. The flight of the horsemen was seen by brave soldiers. 6. Robbers fear a brave man. 7. A brave man is feared by robbers. 8. On the shore they built a tower
for the king. 9. Numa, king of the Romans, changed the number of the months. 10. The number of the months was changed by Numa, a Roman king.

3.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Polyphemus, son of Neptune, had a huge body. 2. Cyrus, the first king of the Persians, remembered all the names of his soldiers. 3. The names of all his soldiers were remembered by Cyrus, king of the Persians. 4. How many ships of the Gauls were driven off? 5. The number of fires in the town was great.

161.

VOCABULARY.

Ālpēs, -ium, r., Alps.  
āvis, -is, r., bird (154).  
fortis, -e, adj., brave.  
mēnsis, -is, m., month.  
mortālis, -e, adj., mortal.  
nāvis, -is, r., ship (154).  
nōbilis, -is, r., noble.  
omnis, -e, adj., all, every.  
vallīs (or -ēs), -is, r., valley.  
vigil, -is, adj., watchful.

animus, -ī, m., mind, soul.  
ēducō, 1, train, educate.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild.  
fuga, -ae, r., flight.  
genus, -eris, n., kind, race.  
habitō, 1, dwell, inhabit.  
latrō, -onis, m., robber.  
litus, -ōris, n., shore.  
multītūdō, -inis, r., multitude.  
Neptūnus, -ī, m., Neptune, god of the sea.  
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., our, ours.  
Numa, -ae, m., Numa, a Roman king.  
Persae, -ārum, m., the Persians.
Polyphemus, -i, m., Polyphemus. sub-moveō, 2, -mövi, -mótem, quot, adj. indecl., how many? (move from beneath) remove, drive rōbur, -ōris, n., strength. away. ruīna, -ae, f., ruin. āvitū, 1, avoid, shun.

4.

162.

COLLOQUIUM.

FRATER ET SORÓRULA.

S. Nārrā mihi, frāter, dē Polyphēmō; quis fuit et ubi habitābat?

F. Polyphemus filius Neptūnī fuit et cum frātribus in īnsulā habitābat.

S. Fuitne arātor et agrōs arābat?


S. Nauta īgitur sine dubiō fuit, et maria nāvibus nāvigābat.

F. Errāvistī, mea sorōrula, Polyphemus fuit pāstor atque māgnōs ovium gregēs habēbat. Fuit autem ingentis corporis sheep more over huge et ūnum tantum oculum habuit. Ulixēs dolōsus eī ūnum only oculum stūpite perforāvit. crafty for him his one stake dug out

S. Ėheu! miserrimum Polyphēmum!

Oh dear! poor
CHAPTER XXI. 1.
THIRD DECLENSION.
MIXED STEMS.¹

163. PARADIGMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clientis, m. &amp; f., client.</th>
<th>Urbis, f., city.</th>
<th>Arx, f., citadel.</th>
<th>Terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. cliēns</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>arx</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. clientis</td>
<td>urbis</td>
<td>arcis</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. clientī</td>
<td>urbī</td>
<td>arcī</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. clientem</td>
<td>urbēm</td>
<td>arcēm</td>
<td>em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. clientē</td>
<td>urbe</td>
<td>arcē</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clientēs, m. &amp; f., clientēs</th>
<th>Urbēs, f., urbe</th>
<th>Arcēs, f., arcē</th>
<th>Termini, m. &amp; f., i, is</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. clientēs</td>
<td>urbēs</td>
<td>arcēs</td>
<td>ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. clientium</td>
<td>urbium</td>
<td>arcium</td>
<td>ium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. clientibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>arcibus</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. clientēs, īs</td>
<td>urbēs, īs</td>
<td>arcēs, īs</td>
<td>ēs, īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. clientibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>arcibus</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

164. ADJECTIVES.

Audāx, bold; prūdēns, sagacious.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. audāx</td>
<td>audāx</td>
<td>prūdēns</td>
<td>prūdēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. audācis</td>
<td>audācis</td>
<td>prūdēntis</td>
<td>prūdēntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. audācī</td>
<td>audācī</td>
<td>prūdentī</td>
<td>prūdentī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. audācem</td>
<td>audāx</td>
<td>prūdentem</td>
<td>prūdens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. audācī, e</td>
<td>audācī, e</td>
<td>prūdentī, e</td>
<td>prūdentī, e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. audācēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. audācium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. audācibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. audācēs, īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. audācibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Usually classed as i stems. See 166.
### 165. PARTICIPLE.

**Amāns, loving.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M. &amp; F.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.V. amāns</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. amantis</td>
<td>amantis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. amantī</td>
<td>amantī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. amantem</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. amante, ē</td>
<td>amante, ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

166. Note in the above tables:

1. That the nouns are declined in the singular like consonant stems (105, 134, 140), and the adjectives also, except that, like i stems, they have an ablative in ē.

2. That the plural of both nouns and adjectives is like that of i stems (149, 150).

167. To the class of mixed stems belong:—

1. Nouns in ns and rs. But parēns has the genitive plural parentum.

2. Monosyllables in s and x following a consonant, together with nix, nivis, snow; nox, noctis, night; os, ossis, bone; mūs, mūris, mouse.

3. Adjectives of one ending, with some exceptions, of which the most important are: dīves, rich; pauper, poor; particeps, sharing; princeps, chief; and compounds of nouns that have consonant stems. These all have the genitive plural in um.

4. Present active participles.

168. **Rules of Gender.** — 1. **Nouns ending in ō, or, ēs, er, es (gen. ēdis, ētis), are masculine.**

But nouns ending in dō and gō, of more than two syllables, together with abstract\(^1\) and collective\(^2\) nouns in ēō, are feminine.

2. **Nouns ending in ēs, ēs not increasing in the genitive, īs, x, and s following a consonant, are feminine.**

---

\(^1\) Abstract nouns are such as denote a thought rather than a thing: ratiō, method.

\(^2\) Collective nouns are such as in the singular imply a number of things or persons: legiō, legion.
3. Nouns ending in a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us, are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, which the learner should note as he advances.

169. Decline together fōns profundus, deep spring; hostis audāx, bold enemy; māgna pars, great part. See 172.

2.

170. EXERCISES.


II. 1. There are mountains in Europe. 2. On the sides of the mountains are tall trees. 3. Many rivers have small sources. 4. Parts of the Alps are beautiful. 5. The Alps have deep valleys and high cliffs. 6. Wild beasts are seen on the sides of the Alps. 7. There you will see shepherds and sheep. 8. Brave soldiers do not fear dangers. 9. The fathers of the young men are soldiers. 10. We honor the brave soldier.

3.

171. EXERCISES.


II. 1. Men dwell in the deep valleys of the mountains. 2. In summer they have flocks on the mountains. 3. Why do men call the eagle the king of birds? 4. Do not keen hunters see the eagle from afar? 5. The enemy’s ships plough the deep sea. 6. The robbers saw the ships with great terror. 7. Solon was the author of many good laws. 8. In ancient states there were free men and slaves. 9. The memory of the wise Solon has been honored.

172.

**VOCABULARY.**

*a dulēscēns, -entis, m. & f., youth, young man.*

*ānēs, fontis, m., source, spring.*

*mōns, montis, m., mountain.*

*pars, partis, f., part.*

*sapiēns, -entis, adj., wise.*

*amnis, -is, m., river (154).*

*arbor, -ōris, f., tree.*

*auctorum, -ōris, m., author.*

*Belgae, -ārum, m., the Belgians.*

*clāssis, -is, f., fleet (154).*

*diligentia, -ae, f., diligence.*

*fera, -ae, f., wild beast.*

*honōrō, 1, honor.*

*hostis, -is, m. & f., enemy.*

*ibi, adv., there.*

*inter, prep. w. acc., between, among.*

*lātus, -oris, x., side. Cf. lātus, broad.*

*lēx, légis, f., law.*

*longē, adv., afar, at a distance.*

*mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom.*

*nām, conj., for.*

*ōvis, -is, f., sheep.*

*pāstor, -ōris, m., shepherd.*

*periculum, -i, n., danger, peril.*

*profundus, -a, -um, adj., deep.*

*regiō, -ōnis, f., region.*

*rēgnō, 1, be king, rule, reign.*

*rūpes, -is, f., rock, cliff.*

*silva, -ae, f., wood, forest.*

*Solōn, -ōnis, m., Solon, an Athenian lawgiver.*

*suāvis, -e, adj., sweet, pleasant.*

*vēnātor, -ōris, m., hunter.*

*vulpēs, -is, f., fox.*

ammis, a large, deep river; not the common prose word for river.

fluēmen (203), general word for river; flowing, as opposed to still water, as a lake or pond.

fluvius (84), not different from fluēmen, but much less used.

hostis, general word for enemy: a public enemy, enemy in war.

inimicus (78), a private or personal enemy; opposed to amicus.

---

1 Predicative accusative.
2 See 144, 145.
4.

COLLOQUIUM.

173. Translate into Latin:—

FATHER AND SON.

F. Tell me (mihi) about Solon, if you please (si placet).

S. Solon was a wise Athenian (Atheniensis); his (eijus) laws were famous, and his memory will always be honored. He was the friend of poor men (pauperum). He saw many lands and many men. He did not fear Pisistratus the usurper (tyrannum).

F. Was Miltiades also (quoque) an Athenian?

S. Certainly; he overcame the Persians (Persas) in the battle of Marathon.¹ He was a brave and skilful leader. He had a brave son.

---

CHAPTER XXII. 1.

REVIEW.

174. Decline together gladius acer, sharp sword; consilium utile, useful counsel; aquila celeris, swift eagle; animal vellox, fleet animal. See 179.

175. Examples of the locative case in the third declension are: Carthagini, or Carthagin, at Carthage; rur, in the country.

176. Affix the proper terminations to the adjectives in the following, and translate:—


¹ Of Marathon, Marathōn, -a, -um.
177. EXERCISES.


II. 1. The soldiers have keen weapons. 2. I have a swift horse. 3. We praise brave men. 4. Do you like sweet food? 5. The lessons are not hard. 6. The plans of the commander are sagacious. 7. Life is short. 8. There are swift eagles in the mountains. 9. The king has bold sailors. 10. The wings of the swift eagle are long.

178. EXERCISES.

Write out the whole of 177. I. in Latin, changing singulars to plurals and plurals to singulars. Thus, 4 will be virós fortés laudō.

Turn II. into Latin, first changing the sentences as directed above in regard to I.

179. VOCABULARY.

acerb, acris, acere, adj., sharp, eager. fidelis, -e, adj., faithful.
brevis, -e, adj., short. initium, -i, n., beginning.
celer, celeris, celere, adj., quick, tellum, -i, n., weapon.
fleet, swift. tristis, -e, adj., sad.
difficilis, -e, adj., difficult, hard. utilis, -e, adj., useful.
equester, -tris, -tre, adj., equestrian. velox, -ocis, adj., swift, fleet.
vita, -ae, v., life.

celer, quick, with the added notion of eagerness or energy.
velox, swift, sometimes implying nimbleness.
CHAPTER XXIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

180. Æ-VERBS.

Regō (stem rege), rule.
Principal Parts: regō, regère, rēxi, rēctum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I rule, etc.</td>
<td>Present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>regimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>regitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regit</td>
<td>regunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was ruling, etc.</th>
<th>I was ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regēbam</td>
<td>regēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbās</td>
<td>regēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbat</td>
<td>regēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall rule, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reg am</td>
<td>regēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg ēs</td>
<td>regētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg et</td>
<td>reg ent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have ruled, etc.</th>
<th>I have been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxi</td>
<td>rēximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxistī</td>
<td>rēxistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxit</td>
<td>rēx ērunt, or-re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had ruled, etc.</th>
<th>I had been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēx eram</td>
<td>rēx erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx erās</td>
<td>rēx erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx erat</td>
<td>rēx erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Rēxi for reg-si. See p. 1, note 2. 2 Rēctum for reg-tum.
### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### ACTIVE.

**Future Perfect.**

I shall have ruled, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēx erō</td>
<td>rēx erimus</td>
<td>erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx erīs</td>
<td>rēx erītis</td>
<td>rectus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx erit</td>
<td>rēx erint</td>
<td>erit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Passive.**

I shall have been ruled, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>erō</td>
<td>erimus</td>
<td>erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eris</td>
<td>eritis</td>
<td>rectus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erit</td>
<td>erint</td>
<td>eritis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

**Present.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reg am</td>
<td>reg āmus</td>
<td>reg ar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg ās</td>
<td>reg ātis</td>
<td>reg āris, or-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg at</td>
<td>reg ant</td>
<td>reg ātur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reg erēm</td>
<td>reg erēmus</td>
<td>reg erēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg erēs</td>
<td>reg erētis</td>
<td>reg erēris, or-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg eret</td>
<td>reg erent</td>
<td>reg erētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēx erim</td>
<td>rēx erimus</td>
<td>sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx erīs</td>
<td>rēx erītis</td>
<td>sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx erit</td>
<td>rēx erint</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxissem</td>
<td>rēxissemus</td>
<td>essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxisēs</td>
<td>rēxisētis</td>
<td>rectus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxisēt</td>
<td>rēxisent</td>
<td>essēsis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE.

**Present.**

- reg e, rule thou.
- regite, rule ye.

**Future.**

- regitō, thou shalt rule.
- regitō, he shall rule.
- regitōte, ye shall rule.
- reguntō, they shall rule.

1 See p. 26, note.
INFINITIVE.

ACTIVE.
Pres. régere, to rule.
Perf. régisse, to have ruled.
Fut. régérurus esse, to be about to rule.

PASSIVE.
regī, to be ruled.
rectus esse, to have been ruled.
rectum irī, to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLE.
Pres. régēns, -entis, ruling.
Fut. régérurus, -a, -um, about to rule.

GERUND.
G. regendī, of ruling.
D. regendō, for ruling.
Ac. regendum, ruling.
Ab. regendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.
Ac. rectum, to rule.
Ab. rectū, to rule, to be ruled.

CHAPTER XXIV. 1.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

181. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of régō.

182. EXERCISES.

II. 1. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 2. To be ruled, to rule. 3. They rule, they were ruling, they will
rule. 4. We rule, we are ruled. 5. We shall rule, we shall be ruled. 6. You are ruling, you were ruling, you will rule. 7. Rule (thou), be (thou) ruled. 8. He is ruling, he is ruled. 9. They ruled, they were ruled. 10. I rule, I ruled, I shall rule.

2.

183. EXERCISES.

Scribō, write; mittō, send; emō, buy.


II. 1. He writes, he is sent, they buy. 2. Is it written? does he send? are they bought? 3. I shall buy, thou wilt send, he will write. 4. It will not be written, we shall not be sent, thou wilt not be bought. 5. To write, to send, to buy. 6. Write, send, buy. 7. We are sent, they were bought, it is (being) written. 8. They write, they will buy, they were sending. 9. I was writing, we were sending, I shall buy. 10. You are sent, it was (being) written, they are bought.

184. EXERCISES.


1 For principal parts, see 186.
2 What would be the meaning of ā militibus?

II. 1. The commander writes a letter. 2. Letters are written by the commander. 3. Hannibal was leading his soldiers into Italy. 4. The citizens are defended by their leaders. 5. Caesar conquered all his enemies. 6. Rome will be defended by the citizens. 7. Drive the sheep into the fields. 8. There are many robbers in the city. 9. Near the town is a broad valley. 10. Come down out of the tower.

3.

185.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. The king's brothers send soldiers into Greece. 2. I will send my brother's son into Africa. 3. You will be sent into Sicily. 4. Send men across the river. 5. The city was defended with great bravery by all the citizens. 6. Pyrrhus led many men across the sea into Italy. 7. In winter many animals are overcome by hunger. 8. The farmers are buying food for their sheep. 9. Strong men were driving the white horses into the river. 10. The good shepherd leads his sheep.

1 See 100.
2 Is it necessary to translate with by cum? See examples and rule, 144, 145.
3 Is in to be separately expressed in Latin? See fifth sentence above, and examples and rule, 135, 136.
186. VOCABULARY.

agō, 3, ēgi, āctum, drive, lead. Caesar, -āris, m., Caesar.
dē-fendō, 3, -dī, -sum, defend. canis, -is, m. & f., dog. (153.)
dē-scendō, 3, -dī, -sum, descend, civis, -is, m. & f., citizen.
go down, come down. dē, prep. w. abl., concerning, about.
dūcō, 3, dūxi, ductum, lead. epistula, -ae, f., letter.
domō, 3, ēmi, ōmptum, buy. famēs, -is, f., hunger, famine.
mittō, 3, misi, missum, send. hiems, hiemis, f., winter.
scribō, 3, scripsi, scriptum, write. latrō, -ōnis, m., robber.
sūmō, 3, sūmpsi, sūmptum, take. mundus, -i, m., world, universe.
vincō, 3, vicē, victum, conquer. prope, prep. w. acc., near.
superō (102), to have the upper hand, surpass, conquer. trāns, prep. w. acc., across, beyond.
vincō, to get the mastery, vanquish, conquer.

What difference do you make out from a comparison of the meanings?

4.

187. COLLOQUIUM.

CHARŌN ET MERCURIUS.

Ch. Salvē, Ō Mercuriū! hail
M. Et tū, salvō, portitor.
ferryman
Ch. Mercuriū, dūcisne hodiē multōs mānēs? souls
M. Hodiē mānium dūcō numerum māgnum. Trīste est sad
officium meum. Ithaca tibi procūl dubiō nōta est atque Ulīxēs.
duty without doubt known
Ch. Rēctē dīxistī. Ithaca est īnsula inter Gracciām et
you have said
Ītaliām sita; et mihi nōtus est Ulīxēs, nam ipse ōlim hūc situated
vēnit.
came
M. Jam aspice mānēs procerum et servōrum īnfiōrum.
now see chiefs unfaithful
Hi omnēs ab Ulīxe necātī sunt. these
Ch. Istdū milī placēt. Mānēs in cymbā trānsvehām.
that boat carry over
Valē, Mercuriū.
M. Et tū valē, Charōn.
5.

188. FOR TRANSLATION.¹

Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō.

Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō mājor,² adulēscēns³ septendecim
annōrum, ad Tīcīnum flūmen patrem vulnerātum servāvit.
In pūgnā Cannēsī fortiter dīmicāvit. Posteā Carthāginem
Novam, urbem in Hispānīā Poenōrum firmīssīmam expūgnāvit.
Obsīdīs Hispānōrum benefīcī tractāvit et libertāte
dōnāvit.⁴ Nōn minus fēlicer Scīpiō in Āfrīcā bellāvit ibique
Poenōs ita ursit⁵ ut Hannibalem ex Itāliā revocārent.⁶ Ad
Zamam Scīpīonis et Hannibalis exercītūs⁷ castra habuērunt;
clārum est illud colloquīum, quod Hannibal, dux Poenōrum,
et Scīpiō, cōnsul Rōmānus, ante pūgnam habuērunt. Poenī
ā Scīpīone superātī fugātique sunt. Scīpiō triumphum
māgnumīcum ex Āfrīcā reportāvit et ā populō Āfrīcānūs
appellātus est.

CHAPTER XXV. 1.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

189. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of regō.

190. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit. 2. Rēxērunt, rēxerant,
rēxerint. 3. Rēxisse, rēctus esse. 4. Rēctum est, rēctum
erat, rēctum erit. 5. Rēxistī, rēxerūs, rēxeris. 6. Rēximus,

---

¹ For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.
² The elder.
³ When a youth.
⁴ Presented them with their liberty = set them free.
⁵ From urgeō; ita ursit, pressed them so hard.
⁶ Ut... revocārent, that they recalled.
⁷ Nom. plur., subject of habuērunt.

II. 1. I have ruled, I had ruled, I shall have ruled. 2. I have ruled, I have been ruled. 3. They have ruled, they have been ruled. 4. You ruled, you had ruled, you will have ruled. 5. He will have ruled, he will have been ruled. 6. To have been ruled, to have ruled. 7. They had ruled, they had been ruled. 8. She has ruled, she has been ruled. 9. It was ruled, it had been ruled, it will have been ruled. 10. They (neut.) were ruled, they had been ruled, they will have been ruled.

2.

191. EXERCISES.


II. 1. She had been led, it has been bought, they (neut.) will have been taken. 2. I have taken, you have bought, he has led. 3. Has it not been taken? had he not been led? have they (neut.) not been bought? 4. I had led, you had bought, he had taken. 5. They will have taken, I shall have led, thou wilt have bought. 6. I was led, it was bought, it had been taken. 7. To have been led, to have been bought, to have been taken. 8. We shall have taken, I shall have bought, he will have led. 9. Did he take? didst thou buy? did you lead? 10. They did not lead, you had not bought, she will not have taken.

1 How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?
192.

EXERCISES.

II. 1. Have you lost your books? 2. My brother will sail² in a small ship. 3. Do men live in trees? 4. Neptune ruled (over) the deep sea. 5. A river flows out of the mountain. 6. The girl’s head was encircled with flowers. 7. War has been waged in Italy. 8. A lazy boy is often despised. 9. The ancient Romans did not despise war. 10. The king had surrounded the city with walls. 11. Did not Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, wage war in Italy?

193.

EXERCISES.

II. 1. A large fleet was bought with gold by Cæsar. 2. The general’s daughter had been carried in a wagon.

¹ *Posita est*, *is situated.* ² *Future passive of vehō.*
4.

195.

COLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Quis fuit Hannibal? Fuit Rōmānus an Carthāginiēnsis?

D. Fuit Carthāginiēnsis et a Scīpiōne vīctus est. Carthaginian where

P. Ubi fuit Hannibalis patria?

D. Carthāgō, Hannibalis patria, fuit in Africā. what destroyed

P. Čur fūit? ċur nōn est in Africā?

D. Quia Carthāgō a Scīpiōne dēlēta est. why

P. Quot nōmina erant Scīpiōnī?

D. Tria Scīpiōnī erant nōmina. Públius Cornēlius Scīpiō. how many three

P. Réctē, mī puer, praenōmen Públius; Cornēlius nōmen

D. Nōnne interdum appellātus est Scīpiō Africānus?

P. Certissimē. Hōc autem nōmen dīcēbant Rōmānī. this moreover
cōgnōmen secundum.

cōgnōmen

CHAPTER XXVI. 1.

REVIEW.

EXERCISES.

1. 1. Défendite, cívēs, cívitātem. 2. Cócitās est máter nostra. 3. Cívēs sunt frātrēs nostrī. 4. Puerī, frātrēs amāte. 5. Ērnāte, cívēs, urbem monumentis statuísque.


1 Sec 157, 158.
II. 1. The citizens are defenders of the state. 2. Roman mothers furnished brave heroes for the state. 3. Do you write letters to your brothers? 4. From springs in the mountains the rivers flow. 5. The city will be adorned with golden statues. 6. In Greece we do not see many beautiful cities. 7. The city is defended by watchful guards. 8. A high wall encircles the farmer’s field. 9. We shall remain near Cæsar’s camp. 10. We teach our children by means of stories.

2.

197.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Who defeated the Roman consuls? 2. The consul was besieging a city of Spain. 3. We all have seen the pleasant light of the moon. 4. The sad maidens were sitting near a deep river. 5. The maidens were weeping because they had lost their flowers. 6. The boars are descending headlong into the sea. 7. Soldiers are not often seen in our streets. 8. The ancient city of Rome was ruled by kings. 9. The shepherd’s son will weep if he loses (shall have lost) a sheep. 10. The teacher was teaching his pupils the poems of Homer.

---

1 Æ rather than ā.
2 See p. 37, note 1.
3 See p. 14, note 1.
4 See 90 and 91.
5 See 117.
6 Omnēs agrees with the understood subject of coercēmur.
7 The city of Rome = the city Rome. See 157, 158.
8 Accusative. See p. 54, note 2.
198. VOCABULARY.

fābula, -ae, f., story, tale, fable.
frāter, -tris, m., brother.
māter, -tris, f., mother.

omnis, -e, adj., all, every, whole.
præceps, -cipitis, adj., headlong.
tristis, -e, adj., sad, gloomy.

3.

199. FOR TRANSLATION.¹

PRÓSERPÍNA.

Próserpína, Céneris filia, aliquandó in Siciliá ad urbem Hennam in campís flóres carpébat, sertá nectébat lúdēbatque cum comitibus. Nam campí ibi flóribus pulchris sparsi² sunt. Subitó terrā concussa³ est atque Plútō, Ínferórum deus, ã terrā émersit;⁴ éjus currum equī átri vehēbant. Ælius Próserpinam aédūxit, ut uxor sua et Ínferórum régina esset;⁵ clámorem puellæ compressit.⁶ Júppiter autem frátrí permiiserat ut Próserpinam abdûceret.⁷ Mátæ cum⁸ ignórræt, ubi filia esset,⁹ tótum orbem terrarum fruṣtrā peragrāvit.

[Continued on p. 92.]

—=-—

CHAPTER XXVII. 1.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

200. The following adjectives have īus (rarely īus) in the genitive singular of all genders, and ĕ in the dative:

alius, alia, aliud, another.
nūllus, -a, -um, no one, none, no.
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole.
ūllus, -a, -um, any.
ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone.

¹ For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.
² From spargō.
³ From concutiō.
⁴ From émergō.
⁵ Ut . . . esset, that she might be.
⁶ From comprímō.
⁷ Ut . . . abdûceret, that he might lead away = to lead away.
⁸ Cum ignórræt, since she did not know.
⁹ Was.
IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

alter, altera, alterum, the other of two.
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.
uter, utra, utrum, which of two?
uterque, utrāque, utrumque, each of two, both.

201. 

**SINGULAR.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>aliiß</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARADIGM.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliæ</td>
<td>aliā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliūrum</td>
<td>aliārum</td>
<td>aliōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliōs</td>
<td>aliās</td>
<td>aliās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL.**

202. 

**EXERCISES.**


II. 1. The farmer was ploughing his field alone. 2. He is praised by one, blamed by another. 3. To which of the two docs the teacher give the praise? 4. Some like boys, others like girls. 5. Death is feared by no good man. 6. The consul conquered some of his enemies, by others he

---

1 Literally, another said another thing. The English of it is, one said one thing, another another.
2 Into which part? i.e., in which direction?
3 Alter ... alter, the one ... the other.
4 Alii ... aliī, some ... others; aliud ... aliud, one thing ... another thing.
5 This sentence illustrates a common usage of the Latin. A verb belonging to two groups of words is often placed only with the last, and must be mentally supplied with the first. With the English it is the reverse. Show the application of the remark.
6 See note 5.
was conquered. 7. One leg is long, the other short. 8. Some praise one thing, others another. 9. The plan of the whole war was disclosed to the enemy. 10. The citizens praised Cicero alone.

203. VOCABULARY.

brevis, -e, adj., short.
ceō, 3, cēssi, cēssum, yield.
Cicero, -ōnis, m., Cícero, a Roman orator.
crūs, crūris, n., leg.
culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault.
dolus, -i, m., trick, deceit.
ē-nūntiō, 1, disclose, announce.
flūmen, -inis, n., river. (172.)

laus, laudis, f., praise.
mors, mortis, f., death.
praeeptor, -ōris, m., teacher.
precēs, -um, r. (plur.), prayers, entreaty.
ratō, -onis, f., plan, method, reason.
servō, 1, save, preserve.
vērus, -a, -um, adj., true.
virtūs, -ūtis, f., virtue, courage.

204. COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

D. Quis fuit Cicero?
P. Clārus cōnsul Rōmānus fuit.
D. Multane bella gessit?
P. Minimē. Ĭrātor fuit; dux mīlitum semel. once only
D. Nōnne ējus ōrātiōnēs in scholā legimus?
P. Complūrēs. Multās epistulās quoque scripsit Cicero. several
D. Ad quōs epistulās scripsit?
P. Ad frātrem et amīcōs.
D. Fuitne Cicero ējus “nōmen”? ¹
P. Nōn fuit “nōmen,” sed “cōgnōmen.”
D. Quid fuit ējus “nōmen”?
P. Tullius.

¹ See 195.
205. Adjectives in Latin, as in English, change their terminations to express different degrees of quality: **altus, altior, altissimus**, *high, higher, highest*.

Adjectives may also be compared in Latin, as in English, by means of adverbs.

206. **Examine the following:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE.</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE.</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altus (alto)</td>
<td>altior, altius</td>
<td>altissimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levis (levi)</td>
<td>levior, levius</td>
<td>levissimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prūdēns (prūdent)</td>
<td>prūdentior, prūdentius</td>
<td>prūdentissimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher (pulchro)</td>
<td>pulchrior, pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser (misero)</td>
<td>miserior, miserius</td>
<td>miserrius, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer (acri)</td>
<td>ācrior, ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe (1) that the comparative is formed in both the above groups by dropping the final vowel of the stem, if the stem ends in a vowel, and adding *ior, ius*.

(2) That the superlative is formed in the first group from the shortened stem by adding *issimus, issima, issimum*. 
207. Six adjectives in īsus drop the final vowel of the stem and add līmus to form the superlative:

facilis, -e, easy.  facilīor, facilius  facilius, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, hard. difficilīor, difficilius  difficilius, -a, -um
similis, -e, like. similīor, similīus  similīus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, unlike. dissimilīor, dissimilīus  dissimilīus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, low. humilīor, humilīus  humilīus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, slender. gracilīor, gracilius  gracilīus, -a, -um

208. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bonus, -a, -um  melior, -ius  optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um  pējor, -us  pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um  mājor, -us  māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um  —, plūs  plūrīmus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um  minor, -us  minimus, -a, -um
vetus  vetustior, -ius  veterrimus, -a, -um

DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE.

209. PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.  PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. altīor</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altīorēs</td>
<td>altīora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. altīoris</td>
<td>altīoris</td>
<td>altīorum</td>
<td>altīorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. altīōrī</td>
<td>altīōrī</td>
<td>altīōribus</td>
<td>altīōribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. altīōrem</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altīōrēs, īs</td>
<td>altīōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. altīōre, ī</td>
<td>altīōre, ī</td>
<td>altīōribus</td>
<td>altīōribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare, and decline in the comparative:

atrōx, -ōcis, fierce.  liber, -era, -erum, free.
audāx, -ācis, bold.  piger, pigra, pigrum, lazy.
celer, -eris, swift.  placidus, -a, -um, calm.
fēlix, -īcis, lucky.  sapiēns, -entis, wise.

1 Plūs has in singular only nom., gen. (plūris), and acc.; in plural, nom. plūrēs, plūra, gen. plūrium, etc.
210. **EXERCISES.**


2.

211. We can say in Latin without difference in meaning:

1. *Quis est eloquentior quam Cicerō?* Who is more eloquent
2. *Quis est eloquentior Cicerōne?* than Cicero?

212. **RULE OF SYNTAX.** — The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when *quam* (than) is omitted.

But the ablative can take the place only of *quam* and the nominative, or *quam* and the accusative.

213. **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Fluviī altiorēs sunt rīvīs, maria altissima¹ sunt.
2. In Āfricā sunt animālia atrōciōra quam in Americā.

II. 1. A river is longer than a brook. 2. Seas are deeper than rivers. 3. The sources of great rivers are not always in high mountains. 4. Elephants bear heavier burdens than

---

¹ The superlative must often be translated by *very* with the positive.
horses. 5. The horse and the dog are very faithful. 6. Your dog is better than mine. 7. Not many cities are more beautiful than Rome. 8. The elephant is bolder than the horse. 9. Your task is easier than mine; but mine is not very hard. 10. The bravest men are not always the wisest.

214. VOCABULARY.

America, -ae, f., America.
autem,₁ conj., but, moreover.
bēstia, -ae, f., beast.
colōnia, -ae, f., colony.
gēns, gentis, f., nation, people.
ignāvia, -ae, f., cowardice.
lītus, -oris, n., shore.
mendāciōnum, -i, n., lying.
nihil, n. (indecl.), nothing.
pigritia, -ae, f., laziness.
quam, conj., than.
rvıus, i, m., brook.

3.

"Proserpin gathering flowers,
Herself a fairer flower, by gloomy Dis
Was gather'd, which cost Ceres all that pain
To seek her through the world."

215. FOR TRANSLATION.²

Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, qui omnia cōnspicit, audīvit quis filiam abdūxisset.³ Itaque statim iter ad Jovem⁴ flexit⁵ et precibus animum ejus ūnflexit, ut filia ā Plūtōne remitterētur.⁶ Jūppiter id permīsit, sī jējūna mānsisset.⁷ Sed cum Prōserpina māli Pūnicī septem grāna gustāvisset,⁸ nōn licuit. Tandem Prōserpinae permīssum est,⁹ ut per partem annī dīmidiam apud mātrem, per partem alteram apud īnferōs esset.¹¹

₁ Always placed after the first or second word in the sentence.
₂ Continued from p. 86.
₃ Had led away.
₄ Nom. Jūppiter.
₅ From flectō.
₆ Ut... remitterētur, that her daughter might be sent back.
₇ Had remained.
₈ Since.
₉ Had tasted.
₁₀ It was permitted = permission was given.
₁₁ Ut... esset, that she should be = to be. For the order, see p. 87, note 5.
CHAPTER XXIX.

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

216. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives, and follow them in comparison.

217. Examine the following: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>STEM</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gratīus, thankful.</td>
<td>grāto-</td>
<td>grātē, thankfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benignus, kind.</td>
<td>benigno-</td>
<td>benignē, kindly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser, wretched.</td>
<td>misero-</td>
<td>miserē, wretchedly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher, beautiful.</td>
<td>pulchro-</td>
<td>pulchrē, beautifully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, brave.</td>
<td>forti-</td>
<td>fortiter, bravely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer, eager.</td>
<td>ācri-</td>
<td>ācriter, eagerly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prūdens, wise.</td>
<td>prūdent-</td>
<td>prudenter, wisely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēlix, lucky.</td>
<td>fēlici-</td>
<td>fēliciter, luckily.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe (1) that the adjectives of the first group are of the o (or second) declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by changing the final o of the stem to ē. (2) That the adjectives of the second group are of the third declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by adding ter. (3) But stems in nt drop t before adding the suffix ter.

218. Examine the following: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>multus, much.</td>
<td>multum, much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, easy.</td>
<td>facile, easily.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impūnis, unpunished.</td>
<td>impūne, with safety.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>citus, quick.</td>
<td>citō, quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subitus, sudden.</td>
<td>subitō, suddenly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prīmus, first.</td>
<td>prīmō, at first.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe that in the first group the accusative singular neuter of the adjective is used as an adverb; in the second, the ablative.
219. **Examine the following:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grātē</td>
<td>grātius</td>
<td>grātissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserē</td>
<td>miserius</td>
<td>miserrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācriter</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēliciter</td>
<td>fēlicius</td>
<td>fēlicissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benē¹</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>optimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malē</td>
<td>pējus</td>
<td>pessimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūrimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>magis</td>
<td>maximē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the adjective; and that the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing, as in the positive, the final o of the stem to ē.

If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb is likewise.

**Compare:**

- placidē, calmly.
- liberē, freely.
- pulchërē, beautifully.
- audācter, boldly.
- celeriter, quickly.
- prūdenter, wisely.

2.

**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Ōlim fuit² Athēnēniensis clarissimus. 2. Fidēlīter légibus³ cīvitātis pārēbat. 3. Jūstē omnibus rēbus⁴ agēbat. 4. Audācter pūgnāvit atque amīcum fortiter défendit. 5. Sapienter juvenēs aliōsque docēbat. 6. Falsō et turpiter accūsātus est; liberē sē⁵ défendit neque timēbat. 7. Ínjustissimē ad mortem damnātus est ā cīvibus. 8. Venēnum in carcere bībit placidē. 9. Êjus⁶ memoria délēbitur nunquam. 10. Quis fuit Athēnēniensis?

II. 1. Was Socrates an illustrious Athenian? 2. Was he more illustrious than other citizens? 3. Did he not act most

---

¹ Formed irregularly from bonus.
² There was.
³ Observe the dative with pāreō.
⁴ Things. See 260.
⁵ Himself.
⁶ Of him.
justly in all respects? 1 4. Did he very faithfully obey the laws of the Athenians? 5. Did he not teach the Athenians very wisely? 6. Did he not defend a young man in battle very bravely? 7. Why was he most basely accused and condemned to death? 8. We shall cherish his memory more diligently. 9. His memory will be cherished faithfully by the best men. 10. In vain shall we seek for a better man than Socrates.

III. 1. Julius Cæsar was a very famous man. 2. He was excellently brought up by his mother. 3. He learned the Greek language very well. 4. He was an illustrious general and fought many battles most successfully. 5. In Gaul he took towns, and cruelly slew many men. 6. He boldly sailed to Britain with many ships. 7. But the inhabitants did not basely beg for peace. 8. He quickly overcame all his enemies. 9. (As) consul he ruled the Roman state wisely and well. 10. He was foully slain by Brutus and other Romans.

221. VOCABULARY.

cruōdēliter [crūdēlis], cruelly.
diligenter [diligēns], diligently.
falsō [falsus], falsely.
fidēliter [fidēlis], faithfully.
frūstrā, in vain.
инjūstē [injustus], unjustly.
jūstē [justus], justly.
liberē [liber], freely, fearlessly.
ōlim, formerly.
optimē, very well, excellently.
sapienter [sapiēns], wisely.
turpiter [turpis], basely, foully.

accūsō, 1 [ad, causa], accuse.
Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., Athenian.
bibō, 3, bibi, pōtum, drink.
carcer, -eris, m., prison.

colō, 3, colui, cultum, cultivate, cherish, care for.
damnō, 1, condemn.
discō, 3, didici, ——, learn.
juvenis, -is, m. & f., youth.
lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language.
nāvigō, 1 [nāvis, agō], sail.
necō, 1, kill. Cf. interīciō.
pārcō, 2, -uī, ——, obey (w. dat.).
pāx, pācis, f., peace.
petō, 3, -ivi, -ii, -itum, beg for, ask.
quaeō, 3, quaesīvi, -ī, quaesītum, seek for, ask, inquire.

sed, conj., but. Cf. autem (214).
Socratēs, -is, m., Socrates, an Athenian philosopher.
venēnum, -i, n., poison.

1 Compare I. 3. 2 See p. 91, note.
3.

222.

COLLOQUIUM.

PATER ET FILIOLUS.

P. Quid, mi filiole, in scholā hodiē discēbās? little son

F. Discēbam, mi pater, pēnsum de adverbiīs longissimum. to what speech

P. Cuī partĭ orātiōnis est adverbiu simillimum?

F. Simillimum, ut opinor, est adverbiu adjectīvō.
as I think

P. Rectē, puer; sed illud mihi explicā, si poteris: Si, this explain if you can

ut dīcis, adverbiu adjectīvō est simile, unde nōmen traxit?

F. Fortasse propter hōc, quod saepissimē verbīs ad-

perhaps on account of this because verbs

jungitur.

P. Optīmē, filiole; ēn tibi āssem! here is for you penny

---

CHAPTER XXX.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

223.

I-VERBS.

Audiō (stem audī), hear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvi, audītum.

ACTIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I hear, etc.</th>
<th>I am heard, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>audīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs</td>
<td>audītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audīunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDICATIVE.

PASSIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>I was heard, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audior</td>
<td>audīmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīris, or-re</td>
<td>audīminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītur</td>
<td>audīuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was hearing, etc.</th>
<th>I was heard, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbar</td>
<td>audiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbāris, or-re</td>
<td>audiēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbātur</td>
<td>audiēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Fourth Conjugation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall hear, etc.</td>
<td>I shall be heard, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audīēmus</td>
<td>audiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>audiēris, or-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
<td>audient</td>
<td>audiētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I had heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīveram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall have heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive.

#### Present.
| audiam | audiāmus | audiar | audiāmur |
| audiēs | audiētis | audiēris, or-re | audiēminī |
| audiet | audient | audiētur | audientur |

#### Imperfect.
| audīrem | audīrēmus | audīrer | audīrēmur |
| audīrēs | audīrētis | audīrēris, or-re | audīrēminī |
| audīret | audīrent | audīrētur | audīrentur |

#### Perfect.
| audīverim | audīverīmus | sim simus |
| audīverīs | audīverītis | auditus | sīs sītis |
| audīverit | audīverint | sit sint |

---

1 See p. 26, note.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

Pluperfect.

audivissem  audivissēmus
audivissēs  audivissētis  auditūs  essēs  auditī  essētis
audivisset  audivissent

Passive.

essēm  essēmus
essēs  essētis
esset  essent

Imperative.

Present.

audī, hear thou.
audīte, hear ye.

audīre, be thou heard.
audīmini, be ye heard.

Future.

audītō, thou shalt hear.
audītō, he shall hear.
audītōte, ye shall hear.
audiuntō, they shall hear.

audītor, thou shalt be heard.
audītor, he shall be heard.
audiuntor, they shall be heard.

Infinitive.

Pres. audīre, to hear.
Perf. audivisse, to have heard.
Fut. auditūrus esse, to be about to hear.

audīri, to be heard.
audit us esse, to have been heard.
auditum īri, to be about to be heard.

Participle.

Pres. audiēns, -entis, hearing.
Fut. auditūrus, -a, -um, about to hear.

GER. audiendus, -a, -um, to be heard.
Perf. auditus, -a, -um, heard, having been heard.

Gerund.

G. audiendī, of hearing.
D. audiendō, for hearing.
Ac. audiendum, hearing.
Ab. audiendō, by hearing.

Supine.

Ac. auditum, to hear.
Ab. auditū, to hear, to be heard.
CHAPTER XXXI. 1.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

224. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and
present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of audiō.

225.

EXERCISES.

5. Audīmur, audiēbāmur, audiēmur. 6. Audīre, audīrī.
7. Audītis, audiēbātis, audiētis. 8. Audīs, audīris. 9. Audiēnt,
audīuntur. 10. Audīent, audīentur.

II. 1. Thou hearest, thou wast hearing, thou wilt hear.
2. I hear, I am heard. 3. He is hearing, he was hearing,
his will hear. 4. To be heard, to hear. 5. We were hearing,
we were (being) heard. 6. We hear, we heard, we shall
hear. 7. They will hear, they will be heard. 8. You heard,
you were heard. 9. Hear (ye), be ye heard. 10. I hear, I
heard, I shall be heard.

226.

EXERCISES.

Pūniō, punish; mūniō, fortify; vestiō, clothe.

I. 1. Pūniēbam, mūniēbam, vestiēbam. 2. Mūniētur, pūniētur,
vestiētur. 3. Pūniēt, vestiēt, mūniēt. 4. Pūniē, mūniēte,
vestiēnī. 5. Vestiētur, pūniētur, mūniētur. 6. Nōnne pūniēmus?
nōnne vestiēmur? nōnne mūniēuntur? 7. Vestiamne?
9. Nōn vestiēris, nōn pūniēt, nōn mūniēmus. 10. Pūniar,
mūniām, vestiēbāris.

II. 1. He was clothing, he was punishing, he was fortifying.
2. They will be clothed, they will be fortified, they will
be punished. 3. Be thou clothed, punish (thou), fortify.
4. I fortify, he punishes, we are clothing. 5. Are you not
being clothed? was it not fortified? will he not be pun-
ished? 6. They are being punished, it is being fortified, thou wilt be clothed. 7. We punish, we were fortifying, they will clothe. 8. Were you being clothed? will it be fortified? shall I be punished? 9. I shall not fortify, you are not being clothed, they will not be punished. 10. I punished, you will fortify, they clothe.

3.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. A good father will nurture, clothe, and instruct his children. 2. It is very pleasant to hear the sweet voice of the nightingale. 3. All our pains are ended by death. 4. The general justly punishes a cowardly soldier. 5. The sheep are carefully guarded by the dog. 6. Scipio finished the war in Africa. 7. The pupils are very faithfully instructed by their teachers. 8. My son, soothe your mother's cares. 9. The city is fortified by strong walls. 10. In summer the trees are clothed with leaves.

228.

VOCABULARY.

custōdiō, 4 [custōs], guard.
dormiō, 4, sleep.
ē-rudiō, 4 [rudīs], teach, instruct.
finiō, 4 [finīs], end, finish.
mollīō, 4 [mollīs], soften, soothe.
mūniō, 4, fortify, defend.
nūtriō, 4, nurture, nourish.
pūniō, 4, punish.
vestīō, 4, clothe.
carmen, -inis, n., song.
dolor, -ōris, m., pain.
folium, -i, n., leaf.
grāmen, -inis, n., grass.
ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., cowardly.
jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant.
luseinia, -ae, f., nightingale.
vēr, vēris, n., spring.
vōx, vōcis, f., voice.

¹ Songs. ² See p. 91, note. ³ Neuter gender. ⁴ See 144, 145.
CHAPTER XXXII. 1.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

229. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of audiō.

230.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Thou hast heard, thou hadst heard, thou wilt have heard. 2. They have been heard, they had been heard, they will have been heard. 3. I have heard, I have been heard. 4. To have been heard, to have heard. 5. We have heard, we had heard, we shall have heard. 6. We have been heard, we had been heard, we shall have been heard. 7. You have heard, you have been heard. 8. He had heard, he had been heard.

2.

231.

EXERCISES.


1 For finīstī. Perfects in ērī often drop v and contract ērī to ērī.
2 For vestīerās.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

II. 1. Have they not been clothed? have they (neut.) not been finished? were they not taught? 2. We have finished, we have clothed, we have taught. 3. She had been taught, they (neut.) had been finished, we (fem.) had been clothed. 4. Didst thou teach? have you finished? has she clothed? 5. They had clothed, they will have taught, I have finished. 6. I had clothed, thou hadst taught, he had finished. 7. We shall not have finished, they will not have clothed, you will not have taught. 8. It was not finished, we had not been taught, you will not have been clothed. 9. You have taught, you had finished, you will have clothed. 10. I shall have clothed, I had taught, I finished.

3.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. The king’s physician was bound by Fabricius’ slave. 2. The valor and endurance (fortitūdō) of the soldiers fortified the city. 3. The Greeks instructed the Romans in the arts. 4. Is it enough for a boy to sleep two hours? 5. The light and heat of the sun had opened the flowers. 6. The citadel was very carefully guarded by

1 How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?

2 In the arts and literature.

3 Compare I. 4.

4 Duās hōrās.

5 See p. 91, note.
the soldiers. 7. To know many things\(^1\) is very useful. 8. To be ignorant of many things is not disgraceful. 9. The general’s camp\(^2\) had not been fortified. 10. Did you not hear the voice of your father?

\begin{center}
\textbf{VOCABULARY.}
\end{center}

aperiō, 4, -uí, -tum, open, disclose.
ne-sciō, 4, know not, be ignorant of.
sciō, 4, know, know how.
venīō, 4, vēnī, ventum, come.
vinciō, 4, vinxī, vincutum, bind.

\textit{ad}, prep. w. acc., to, towards.
\textit{ars}, artis, r., art. \((167. \, 2.)\)
calor, -ōris, m., heat.

\textit{Fabricius}, -ī, m., Fabricius, a Roman general.
litterae, -ārum, r., letters, literature; often = epistula.
lūx, lūcis, r., light, daylight.
medicus, -ī, m., physician.
nox, noctis, r., night. \((167. \, 2.)\)
octō, num. adj., indecl., eight.
turpis, -e, adj., base, disgraceful.

\begin{center}
\textbf{4.}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\textbf{COLLOQUIUM.}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\textbf{PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
P. Dē quā rē est pēnsum hodiernum?\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l}
P. \textit{Hērī} quartam conjugātiōnem nesciēbas; scāsne hodiē?\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l}
P. Mox subjunctīvum quoque discēs.\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l}
\textit{D.} Estne utilius indicātiīvum scīre quam subjunctīvum?\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l}
P. \textit{Utrumque dēbēmus scīre; indicātiūvus autem saepius invenītur.}\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l}
\textit{D.} Adhūc conjugātiōnēs didicī quattuor. Suntne plūrēs?\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l}
P. Nōn plūrēs; sed multa verba sunt anōmala.\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\textit{castrōrum}. What must be the number of the verb of which \textit{castra} is the subject?\end{center}

\begin{center}
\textit{1} See \textbf{117}.
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\textit{2} Remember that the Latin word for \textit{camp} is plural, \textit{castra},\end{center}
CHAPTER XXXIII.
THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in ō.\(^1\)

Capiō (stem cape), take.
Principal Parts: capiō, capère, cēpī, captum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Passive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I take, etc.</td>
<td>I am taken, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>capior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>caperis, or-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was taking, etc.</td>
<td>I was taken, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall take, etc.</td>
<td>I shall be taken, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiēris, or-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēt</td>
<td>capiētura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiēminĩ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiēntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.</td>
<td>captus sum, es, est, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.</td>
<td>captus eram, erãs, erat, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.</td>
<td>captus erō, eris, exit, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Verbs in ō of the third conjugation are distinguished from those of the fourth by the active infinitive present. What forms of capiō are like those of audiō? Make a general statement.
THIRD CONJUGATION.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ACTIVE.  PASSIVE.

PRESENT.
capiam, capiäs, capiat, etc. capiar, -iäris or -re, -iätur, etc.

IMPERFECT.
caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris or -re, -erētur.

PERFECT.
cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus sim, sīs, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT.
cēpissem, cēpisssēs, cēpisset, etc. captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE.
Pres. capē, take thou. capere, be thou taken.
capite, take ye. capimini, be ye taken.
Fut. capito, thou shalt take, capitor, thou shalt be taken, etc.

INFINITIVE.
Pres. capere, to take. capī, to be taken.
Perf. cēpissee, to have taken. captus esse, to have been taken.
Fut. captūrus esse, to be about to take. captum īrī, to be about to be taken.

PARTICIPLE.
Pres. capiēns, taking. Ger. capiēndus, to be taken.
Fut. captūrus, about to take. Perf. captus, having been taken.

GERUND.
capiendī, of taking, etc.

SUPINE.
Ac. captūm, to take. Ab. captū, to take, to be taken.
CHAPTER XXXIV. 1.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

236. VERBS IN īō.

Learn all the tenses of the indicative, the present imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of capiō.

237. EXERCISES.


II. 1. We are taking, we were taking, we shall be taking. 2. Take, be taken. 3. Thou art taking, thou wast taking, thou wilt take. 4. You have taken, you had taken, you will have taken. 5. It is taken, it was taken, it will be taken. 6. I was taking, I was taken. 7. To take, to have taken. 8. To be taken, to have been taken. 9. It (fem.) has been taken, it had been taken, it will have been taken. 10. We have taken, we have been taken.

238. EXERCISES.


---

1 Pronounced de-in-de. 2 Sent.
honórficē à Pyrrhō exceptī sunt. 10. Pāx cum Pyrrhō non facta est.

II. 1. A wrong was done to the Romans by the Tarentines. 2. Against Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, the Romans sent the consul Laevinus. 3. The spies of Pyrrhus were taken by Laevinus and led through his camp. 4. The Romans did not make peace with King Pyrrhus. 5. Fabricius saw through the design of the king and was not frightened. 6. You will welcome your friend to-day. 7. I welcome my best friend with great pleasure. 8. The enemy threw their spears and fled into the woods. 9. Did not Caesar either conquer or slay all his enemies? 10. Finally he was himself (ipse) slain by Brutus his friend, and others.

239. VOCABULARY.

ex-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], catch, accept, welcome.
faciō, 3, fēci, factum, make, do.
fugiō, 3, fūgī, fugitum, flee.
inter-ficiō, 3, -feci, -fectum [faciō], kill, slay. Cf. necō (221).
jacīō, 3, jēci, jactum, throw.
per-spiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectum [specīō], see through, into.
recipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capīō], take back, get again, receive.
sē recipere, withdraw, retreat.

dē-inde, adv., then, next.
dēnique, adv., finally.
explōrator, -ōris, m., scout, spy.
finis, -is, m., end.
honor, -ōris, m., honor.
honórficē, adv., honorably.
injūria, -ae, f., wrong, injury.
Laevinus, -i, m., Laevinus, a Roman.
lēgātus, -i, m., ambassador, lieutenant.
per, prep. w. acc., through.
proelium, -i, n., battle. Cf. pūgna (102).
summus, -a, -um (sup. of supemus), adj., highest.
Tarentinus, -i, m., an inhabitant of Tarentum, a Tarentine.

1 And ... not, neque. 2 See 144, 145.
CHAPTER XXXV. 1.

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

240.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Fugātur, terrētur, pōnitur, vincētur.  2. Servābebris, tenēberis, mittēre, vestīre.  3. Laudātī sumus, prohibītī sumus, ductī sumus, ērudītī sumus.  4. Ōrnāre, monēre, trahere, pūnire.  5. Amāri, docēri, contemnī, jacī, aperīri.  6. Amātae sunt, monitae sunt, exceptae sunt, audītae sunt.


241.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Thou lovest, thou advisest, thou rulest, thou hearest.  2. I shall praise, I shall destroy, I shall drive, I shall guard.  3. You were adorning, you were seeing, you were conquering, you were fortifying.  4. We have sung, we have had, we have placed, we have bound.  5. You have changed, you have held, you have driven, you have taken, you have fortified.  6. I had carried, I had destroyed, I had furnished, I had led, I had slept.
II. 1. We are put to flight, we are frightened, we are placed, we are bound. 2. He will be saved, he will be held, he will be sent, he will be clothed. 3. They have been praised, they have been prevented, they have been led, they have been instructed. 4. They will be adorned, they will be advised, they will be drawn, they will be punished. 5. To be loved, to be taught, to be despised, to be thrown, to be opened. 6. Thou hast been loved, thou hast been advised, thou hast been welcomed, thou hast been heard.

III. 1. Sleep, surpass, do (fac), bind, conquer, furnish. 2. To wound, to throw, to come, to teach, to flow. 3. They are received, they are witnessed, they are driven, they are clothed, they are taught. 4. I shall teach, I shall punish, I shall draw, I shall flee, I shall create. 5. They have sent, they have had, they have armed, they have thrown, they have fled. 6. Thou art conquered, thou art blamed, thou art frightened, thou art bound, thou art taken.

3.

242.

COLLOQUIUM.

JACÓBUS ET AUGUSTUS.

J. Dēnique ad finem pēnsī pervēnimus; quid jam in- fin ally end cipiēmus?

begin

A. Tū quidquid vidēbitur incipiēs: ego incipiām nihil. you whatever seems good

why

J. Quārē? esne dēfessus?

A. Certē, admodum dēfessus; pēnsum recōgnōscendum certainly downright mē quidem paene finīvit. at least almost

J. Mox recreāberis, si mēcum ad natandum venīēs.

soon will be rested with me swim
A. Profectō tēcum veniam, nam natūre mihi est jucun-
surely with you for
dissimun et semper et pracciū cum,
both especially when

"Sōle sub ardentī resonant arbusta cicādis."
under glowing resound groves the cicadae

J. Quam lautē poētām aliquem laudās!
how elegantly some quote

A. Hunc Vergilī versiculum mē docuit praecessor.
this Vergil line

CHAPTER XXXVI. 1.
FOURTH DECLENSION.

243. The stem ends in u.

244. RULE OF GENDER.—Nouns in us are masculine; those in ū are neuter.

1. The following nouns, and a few others, are feminine: acus, needle; domus, house; Īdūs (plur.), Ides; manus, hand; porticus, portico; tribus, tribe.

245. PARADIGMS.

Gradūs, m., step.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V.</td>
<td>gradūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>gradūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>gradu (ū)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>gradum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>gradū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Genū, n., knee.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V.</td>
<td>genū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>genūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>genius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>genū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>genū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MASC. TERMINATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V.</th>
<th>ēs</th>
<th>ēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>uum</td>
<td>uum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>ibus (ubus)</td>
<td>ibus (ubus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>ēs</td>
<td>ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>ibus (ubus)</td>
<td>ibus (ubus)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
246. The fourth declension is a modification of the third. Thus, gradŭs is for graduīs, gradum for graduem, gradŭ for gradue, etc.

247. Artus, joint, partus, birth, tribus, tribe; sometimes portus, harbor; verŭ, a spit; also dissyllables in cus, have the termination ubus in the dative and ablative plural.

248. Domus, house, has also forms of the second declension. See special paradigms, 262.

249. Decline together domus mea, my house; exercitus māgnus, large army; Ἰδūs Mārtiae, Ides of March.

250.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. The enemy (plur.) were conquered on the arrival of Cāesar. 2. Many animals fight with their horns. 3. Many lakes are seen in the Alps. 4. The ancients honored the oak (as) the tree of Jupiter. 5. The songs of birds are heard among the oaks. 6. In ancient times men fought with bows and arrows. 7. The consulship of Cicero was very renowned. 8. Cāesar came into Italy with a large army. 9. The arrival of the army freed the citizens from fear. 10. Between school and home we take (make) many steps.

1 Nāvēs longae, ships of war. 2 See 136. 3 Predicate accusative. 4 See 128, 129, 130.
251. **VOCABULARY.**

- adventus, -ūs, m. [adveniō], arrival, approach.
- arcus, -ūs, m., bow.
- cantus, -ūs, m., song. [sulship.
- cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. [cōnsul], cons-
cornū, -ūs, n., horn.
- exercitus, -ūs, m. [exerceō], army.
- lacus, -ūs, m., lake.
- magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister], office, magistrate.
- manus, -ūs, v., hand.
- metus, -ūs, m., fear.
- mōtus, -ūs, m. [moveō], movement, motion.
- palūs, -ūdis, f., swamp, marsh.
- portus, -ūs, m., harbor.
- quercus, -ūs, f., oak. (11. 4.)
- sēnsus, -ūs, m. [sentīō], sense, feeling.
- amplus, -a, -um, adj., great, re-
nowned, honorable.
- domiciliūm, -i, n., home. (79.)
- frōns, frondis, f., chaplet of leaves.
- Jūpīter, Jovis, m., Jupiter, the supreme god. (262.)
- sagitta, -ae, f., arrow.
- salūs, -ūtis, f., safety.
- schola, -ae, f., school.
- victor, -ōris, m. [vincō], conqueror.

---

**CHAPTER XXXVII. 1.**

**FIFTH DECLENSION.**

252. The stem ends in ē.

253. **RULE OF GENDER.**—**Nouns of the fifth de-
clesion are feminine, except diēs, day, which is
commonly masculine in the singular, and always in
the plural.**

254. **PARADIGMS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. diēī</td>
<td>diērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. diēī</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. diem</td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. diē</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēī</td>
<td>ērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēī</td>
<td>ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>em</td>
<td>ēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

255. Only diēs and rēs are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have nominative and accusative plural.
256. Decline together rēs pūblica, state; in sing., bona fīdēs, good faith; māgna spēs, great hope; diēs quīntus, fifth day.

257. EXERCISES.

II. 1. God is the creator of all things. 2. The commonwealth is dear to all good citizens. 3. In all human affairs there is much uncertainty. 4. The army was marshalled in a large plain. 5. The enemy advanced against the Romans’ line of battle. 6. The general praised the soldiers for their fidelity. 7. In the line of battle were many foot-soldiers. 8. They had great hopes of victory. 9. In a few days the arrangement of things will be changed. 10. The consul gave a pledge to the state.

258. VOCABULARY.
acciēs, -ēī, f., line of battle.
fidēs, -ēī, f., faith, fidelity, pledge.
plānitiēs, -ēī, f., plain.
rēs pūblica, f., commonwealth.
spēs, spēī, f., hope.
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious.
certus, -a, -um, adj., fixed, certain.
creātor, -ōris, m., creator.
domīna, -ae, f., mistress.
ex-spectō, 1, await, expect.
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., human.

in-certus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain.
in-strūō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up, marshal.
ōrdō, -inis, m., order, arrangement.
paucus, -a, -um, adj., few, little.
pedes, -itūs, m. [pēs], foot-soldier.
posterus, -a, -um, adj., following, next.
prō, prep. w. abl., for, in behalf of.
prō-cēdō, 3, -cēssī, -cēssum, advance.

1 Many things are uncertain.
2 In with accusative.
3 Dē with ablative.
4 Omit.
5 See 135, 136.
6 Mostly used in the plural.
259. Examine the following:—

1. Claudus alterō pede, lame in one foot.
2. Mōribus similēs, similar in character.
3. Virtūte praecēdunt, they excel in courage.
4. Numerō ad duodecim, about twelve in number.

Observe that the ablatives pede, mōribus, virtūte, and numerō, answer the question in what respect? This ablative is called the Ablative of Specification.

260. Rule of Syntax.—The ablative is used to denote that in respect to which anything is said to be, or to be done.

261. Colloquium.

Praeceptor et Discipulus.

P. Omnium déclinatiōnum quae est difficillima?

D. Tertia mihi vidētur difficillima.

P. Quārē ita cēnsēs?

D. Varīetātis causā terminatiōnum in nōminātīvō singulārī. Genus quoque est mihi molestissimum, praesertim nōminum gender also especially nouns in is désinentium.

P. Tenēsne memoriā quae nōmina plūrālem genetīvum in ium habeant?

D. Prīnum nōminā in is et ēs désinentia, sī in genetīvō first singulārī nōn crēscunt; ut hostis et nūbēs.

Deinde monosyllaba in s vel x désinentia, sī ante s et x stat cōnsonāns; ut urbs et arx. consonant

Tum nōmina in ns et rs désinentia; ut cliēns et cohors.

Dēnique neutra in e, al, ar désinentia; ut mare, animal, neuters calcar.
P. Optimē, mī puer; bene studuistī et bene memoriā tenēs. Jam tibi licet īre ad lūdendum.

---

CHAPTER XXXVIII. 1.

262. SPECIAL PARADIGMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vir, m.,</th>
<th>Viś, r.,</th>
<th>Deus, m.,</th>
<th>Senex, m.,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>man.</td>
<td>strength.</td>
<td>god.</td>
<td>old man.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SINGULAR.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V.</th>
<th>Viś</th>
<th>deūs</th>
<th>senex</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vir</td>
<td>Viś</td>
<td>deūs</td>
<td>senex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. virī</td>
<td>Viś¹</td>
<td>deī</td>
<td>senis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. virō</td>
<td>Vi¹</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>senī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. virum</td>
<td>vim</td>
<td>de um</td>
<td>senem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. virō</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>sene</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V.</th>
<th>Viēs</th>
<th>deī, diē, diūm</th>
<th>senēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>virī</td>
<td>Viēs</td>
<td>deī, diē, diūm</td>
<td>senēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. virōrum</td>
<td>Viērum</td>
<td>de ērum, de ūm</td>
<td>senum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. virīs</td>
<td>Vīribus</td>
<td>de ēs, diēs, diūs</td>
<td>senibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. virōs</td>
<td>Viēs</td>
<td>deōs</td>
<td>senēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. virīs</td>
<td>Vīribus</td>
<td>de ēs, diēs, diūs</td>
<td>senibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Iter, n., way.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jōppiter,</th>
<th>Bōs, m. &amp; r., ox, cow.</th>
<th>Domus, r., house.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jupiter,</td>
<td>Bōs</td>
<td>Domus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SINGULAR.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V.</th>
<th>Jōppiter</th>
<th>bōs</th>
<th>domus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iter</td>
<td>Jōppiter</td>
<td>bōs</td>
<td>domus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. itineris</td>
<td>Jovis</td>
<td>bovis</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. itinerī</td>
<td>Jovī</td>
<td>bovi</td>
<td>domū, ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. iter</td>
<td>Jovem</td>
<td>bovem</td>
<td>domum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. itinerē</td>
<td>Jove</td>
<td>bove</td>
<td>domō, ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V. itinerā</th>
<th>bōvēs</th>
<th>domūs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>itinerārum</td>
<td>bovum, bōum</td>
<td>domūm, ērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. itineribus</td>
<td>bōbus, būbus</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. itinerā</td>
<td>bōvēs</td>
<td>domōs, ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. itineribus</td>
<td>bōbus, būbus</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The genitive and dative singular are rare.
FOR TRANSLATION.

263.

FOR TRANSLATION.

Proserpina is carried off by Pluto.

[Review 199 and 215.]

Dum Proserpina luco
Ludit, et aut violas aut candida lilia carpit,
Dumque puellari studio¹ calathosque² sinumque³
Implet, et aequales⁴ certat superare legendo,⁴
Paene simul visa est dilectaque⁵ raptaque⁶ Diti.⁷

Her Chance of Return is lost.

Dixerat.⁸ At Ceresī certum est⁹ educere¹⁰ natam.¹¹
Non ita fata sinunt, quoniam jejunia virgo
Solverat et, cultīs¹² dum simplex errat¹³ in hortīs,
Poeniceum¹⁴ curva¹⁵ decerpserat arbore pomum,
Sumptaque callenti septem de cortice grana
Presserat¹⁵ ore suo: solusque ex omnibus illud
Ascalaphus vidit. . . .
Vidit, et indicio reditum crudelis ademit.

¹ Puellāri studīō = puellāri cum studīō. See 144 and 145.
² Que . . . que, both . . . and.
³ Aequālēs = comitēs.
⁴ Legendō, in gathering (flowers).
⁵ Dilecta, from diligō.
⁶ Rapta, from rapiō. With dilecta and rapta supply est.
⁷ Diti. Translate as if, instead of the dative, it were ā Dite.
⁸ Dixerat, i.e. Jūppiter.
⁹ Ceresī certum est, to Ceres it is determined = Ceres is resolved.
¹⁰ Educere, that is, from the lower world.
¹¹ Naṭam = filiam.
¹² Cultīs, with hortīs.
¹³ Errat. Translate as if it were errābat. The present is very often used after dum, referring to past time. So lūdit, l. 2.
¹⁴ Poeniceum, with pōmum.
¹⁵ Curvā, bending. The tree is loaded with fruit.
¹⁶ Presserat, from premō.
CHAPTER XXXIX. 1.

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns may be divided into eight classes, and arranged in three groups:

1. Personal.
2. Reflexive.
3. Possessive.
4. Determinative.
5. Demonstrative.
6. Relative.
7. Interrogative.
8. Indefinite.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

264.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST PERSON.

Egō, I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. egō, I.</td>
<td>nōs, we.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. meī, of me.</td>
<td>nostrum, or nostri, of us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mihi (mi) to, for me.</td>
<td>nōbis, to, for us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. mē, me.</td>
<td>nōs, us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. (ā) mē, by me.</td>
<td>(ā) nōbis, by us.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECOND PERSON.

Tū, thou.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. tū, thou.</td>
<td>vōs, you, ye.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. tuī, of thee.</td>
<td>vestrum, or vestri, of you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. tibī, to, for thee.</td>
<td>vōbis, to, for you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. tē, thee.</td>
<td>vōs, you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. (ā) tē, by thee.</td>
<td>(ā) vōbis, by you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

Suī, of himself, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>suī, of themselves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. suī, of himself, herself, itself.</td>
<td>suī, of themselves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. sibī, to, for himself, etc.</td>
<td>sibī, to, for themselves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. sē (sēsē), himself, etc.</td>
<td>sē (sēsē), themselves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. (ā) sē (sēsē), by himself, etc.</td>
<td>(ā) sē (sēsē), by themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
265. 1. The personal pronoun of the third person is *is, ea, id, he, she, it*. But when reference is made in the oblique cases to the subject of the sentence, the reflexive *suī* is used: *Omnēs hominēs sē* (or *sēsē*) *amant*, *all men love themselves*.

2. The nominatives of the personal pronouns are much less frequently used in Latin than their equivalents in English. Why is this? In general, they are used only for emphasis or contrast: *Ego sum aegrōtus, tū valēs, I am sick, you are well.*

3. “*With me, with you,*” etc., are not expressed, as you would expect, by *cum mē, cum tē,* etc., but always by *mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum*. So *quibuscum* (279).

4. The personal pronouns of the first and second person are often used with reflexive sense: *Tū tē amās, thou lovest thyself; ego mihi noceō, I do harm to myself.*

**Possessive Adjective Pronouns.**

266. Possessive adjective pronouns are formed from the stems of personal and reflexive pronouns:

- *meus, -a, -um, my, mine*  
  (voc. sing. masc. mī).  
  *suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their (own).*

- *tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine;*  
  *noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.*  
  *vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours.*

2.

**Exercises.**


II. 1. Thy mother is dear to thee, mine to me. 2. All your plans are known to us. 3. The boy loves himself too much. 4. The burden will be carried by me, by you, by us,
by thee. 5. With you and without you we shall be equally happy. 6. Thee I love, but not thy dog. 7. O, how I shall miss you, my friend! 8. We¹ are poor, you¹ are rich. 9. Our life is very short. 10. The boy carried a wooden cup with him(self).

268. VOCABULARY.
agito, 1 [agō, put in motion], disturb, vex, chase.
beatus, -a, -um, adj., happy.
culpō, 1 [culpa], blame, censure, reproach.
desiderō, 1, desire, long for, miss.
ligneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum, wood], of wood, wooden.
nimium, adv., too, too much.
notus, -a, -um, adj., known.
onus, -eris, n., burden
oratio, -onis, f. [orō], speech, talk, address.
pariter, adv. [pār, equal], equally.
pauper, -eris, adj., poor. (167. 3.)
per-fodiō, 3, -fodi, -fossum, dig through, stab, pierce.
quoque, conj., also, too.
sine, prep. w. abl., without.
ut, adv and conj., as

3.

269. COLLOQUIUM.
FRATER ET SORORCULA.

F. Age, sororcula mea, si tibi placet, ambulābimus.
come little sister walk

S. Quō est tibi in animō, cāre frāter, ambulāre? Nōnne whither
in agrōs?

F. Ita est, in agrōs et in umbrā silvārum.
yes shade

S. Libenter tēcum ambulō, tamen . . .
gladly but

F. Quid? cūr tantum dubitās; si, ut dīcis, mēcum ambulās
so much hesitate
libenter?

S. Nōlī mē ridēre. Metuō anguēs. "Frigidus latet
don’t laugh at snakes cold lurks
angnis in herbā," ut cantat Vergilius.

F. Nōlī metuere. Veni; ubi frāga mātūra sunt repерēri.
where strawberries ripe are have found.

S. Ō quam suāve! In mē nōn jam est mora.
delightful. now delay

¹ Why should the pronouns be expressed in Latin?
CHAPTER XL. 1.
DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

270. PARADIGMS: Is, idem, ipse.

Is, that, this; also, he, she, it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ējus</td>
<td>ējus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eī</td>
<td>eī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

İdem, same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. īdem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ējusdem ējusdem</td>
<td>eōrundem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. īdem</td>
<td>eīdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eundem ēndem</td>
<td>īdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ēōdem ēōdem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ipse, self (himsel, etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Determinative pronouns, like adjectives, agree with nouns expressed or understood; İdem and ipse also with pronouns.

2. Is is very often used as a personal pronoun, meaning he, she, it, they. Also as the antecedent of qui, who; is qui, he who.

3. İdem is compounded of is and the suffix dem. İdem is for īsdem; idem for īddem; eundem, etc., for eudem, etc.; eōrundem, etc., for eōrumdeman, etc.
4. Ipse, self (intensive) is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood, and must be distinguished from sē, self (reflexive):

(1) Homo ipse veniet, the man himself (and not another) will come.
(2) Hominem ipsum vidī, I saw the man himself.
(3) Homo sē culpatis nimium, the man blames himself too much.
(4) Mīles frātrem, dein sē ipsum interfēcit, the soldier killed his brother, then himself.

5. How do we indicate in English in speech, and how in writing, when we use self (himself, etc.) whether we intend the intensive or the reflexive self?

6. Ipse may be variously translated: ipse fēcī, I myself did it, I did it alone, I did it of my own accord.

271. Decline together is homo, that man; ea nāvis, that ship; id bellum, that war; idem diēs, the same day; eadem manus, the same hand; idem onus, the same burden; vir ipse, the man himself.

2.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Sallust is an elegant author; have you read his writings? 2. I have not read those, but Cicero’s. 3. Fortune favored now you, now them. 4. Even (ipse) your own friend will blame you. 5. The minds of men are not always the same. 6. We were sailing with you in the same ship. 7. He gave me the book of his own accord. 8. The master

1 Indirect object, though translated as a direct object. See 343.
3 Use passive of vehō.
4 See 270. 6.
offers the same rewards to the boys. 9. The same rewards are offered by the master himself.

273. VOCABULARY.

Androclus, -i, m., Androclus.
auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō, increase], maker, author.
elegāns, -ntis, adj., choice, elegant.
faveō, 2, fāvī, fātum, be favor-
able to, befriend (with dat.).
interdum, adv., sometimes.
mēns, mentis, f., mind, purpose.
nocēō, 2, nocuī, nocitum, do harm to, hurt, injure (with dat.).
orbis, -is, m., circle.
orbis terrārum, the earth, the world.

Sallustius, -i, m., Sallust, a his-
torian. (79.)
scriptor, -ōris, m. [scribō], writer, author.
scriptum, -i, n. [scribō], writing, written work.
sex, num. adj., indecl., six.
specus, -ūs, m., cave.
suāviter, adv. [suāvis], sweetly, delightfully.
vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, fea-
tures, looks.

animus (161), mind, soul, heart; the general word for mind.
mēns, mind, as that which thinks, intellect; more limited in meaning.

3.

COLLOQUIUM.

274. Translate into Latin:—

BROTHER AND LITTLE SISTER. — Continued.

B. Let us carry¹ with us two² little-baskets.³
S. See!⁴ I have them in my hand already.⁵
B. The sun is hot,⁶ but there is a cool⁷ breeze.
S. Oh, how the trees and flowers delight me!
B. To stay in the house is downright⁸ stupid.⁹
S. Yes, indeed,¹⁰ and I don't mean to any more.¹¹
B. Here are¹² the strawberries. Now we will fill our
baskets. Isn't it jolly?¹³

¹ Let us carry, portēmus.
² Duās. See 311. 4.
³ Corbula, -ae.
⁴ Ecce. ⁶ Jam.
⁵ Ardēns. ⁷ Frigidus.
⁸ Admodum. ⁹ Molestus.
¹⁰ Yes, indeed, ista sunt, those things are (true).
¹¹ Neither is it in mind to me more.
¹² See 269, l. 2.
¹³ suāvissimum.
CHAPTER XLI. 1.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

275. PARADIGMS: Hīc, iste, ille.

Hīc, this (near), this of mine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. hīc</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. hūjus</td>
<td>hūjus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. huīc</td>
<td>huīc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Iste, that, that of yours.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. istīus</td>
<td>istīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ille, that (yonder).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. illīus</td>
<td>illīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Hīc is used of that which is near the speaker in place, time, or thought, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the First Person: Hīc equus, this horse (near me, or belonging to me).

2. Iste is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Second Person: Iste equus, that horse (near you, or belonging to you).

3. Ille is used of that which is relatively remote from the speaker, or person addressed, in place, time, or thought, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Third Person: Ille equus, that horse (yonder).

4. Ille often means that well-known, that famous.
5. Hic and ille are sometimes used in contrast: Hic, the latter, ille, the former.

6. Is, as a determinative pronoun, sometimes approaches hic in meaning, sometimes ille. Hence it is to be translated this or that, according to the connection.

276.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. These mountains are very high. 2. I shall always be mindful of that friend of yours. 3. This thing will be hurtful to you. 4. Demosthenes and Cicero were famous orators; the former was a Greek, the latter a Roman. 5. The citizens of yonder city are most wretched. 6. The air in these mountains is lighter than in those valleys. 7. He gave me this pretty bird. 8. That old farmer’s wine is good. 9. I have read that book of yours. 10. That book of yours has been read by me, by you, by us, by us ourselves.

277.

EXERCISES.


---

1 See p. 91, note.
2 That of yours = iste.
3 Superlative.
4 See 275. 5.
improbórum. 8. Róma illa praeda vestra erit. 9. Vós ipsis expúgnávistis Saguntum, oppidum illud firmíssimum. 10. Hás Alpés, illós Pyrénæós montés superávistis; Ró-
mänós mox vincéritis.

II. 1. Hannibal increased the courage of the soldiers by these words. 2. Again, soldiers, have you defeated those famous Romans. 3. The gods and your own courage have given us the victory. 4. This fair Italy will soon be ours. 5. Rome itself, that proud city, will be taken. 6. Those arms of yours will be stained with the best blood of Rome. 7. Those famous legions have been defeated. 8. Cross with me yonder mountains. 9. Those fierce enemies of the Romans, the Samnites, will welcome us. 10. Rome shall be the reward of valor. Forward!¹

278.

**VOCABULARY.**

āér, ācris, m., air.
cantus, -ús, m., singing, song.
délectō, 1, delight.
Dēmosthenēs, -is, m., Demosthe-
nes, an Athenian orator.
divēs, -itis, adj., rich. (167. 3.)
dō, dare, dédi, datum, give.
ex-pūgnō, 1, take by storm, take.
firmō, 1 [firmus], make firm or steadfast, fortify, strengthen.
firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, firm.
improbus, -a, -um, adj., bad.
itrum, adv., a second time, again.
lātrō, 1, bark, bark at.

legiō, -ōnis, f., legion.
maculō, 1, stain.
mox, adv., soon. [sury.
necessārius, -a, -um, adj., neces-
prædæ, -ae, f., booty, spoil.
Saguntum, -i, n., Saguntum, town
in Spain.
Samnīs, -itis, m. & f., a Samnite.
sanguis, -inis, m., blood.
silva, -ae, f., wood, forest.
socīus, -i, m., ally, associate.
superbus, -a, -um, adj., proud.
tenuis, -e, adj., thin, light.
trāncendō, 3, -i, -sum, cross.

cantus, song, melody, whether of the voice of man, of birds, or of musical instruments.
carmen, song, as melody, and also in a wider sense; often with reference to the composition. Hence, a poem.²

¹ Prōcédite.
² It must not be supposed that distinctions in synonymous words are always observed in usage.
CHAPTER XLIII. 1.

PRONOUNS: RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

279. PARADIGMS: Quī, quis, aliquis.

Relative: Quī, who, which, that.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cūjus</td>
<td>cūjus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cuī</td>
<td>cuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Interrogative: Quis, who, which, what?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quis</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cūjus</td>
<td>cūjus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cuī</td>
<td>cuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indefinite: Aliquis, some one, some, any one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. aliquis</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. alicūjus</td>
<td>alicūjus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. alicuí</td>
<td>alicuí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. alicuem</td>
<td>aliquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. alicuō</td>
<td>aliquā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe the feminine nominative singular, and the neuter nominative plural of aliquis, and compare them with corresponding forms of quis.
PRONOUNS.

2. *Aliquis* is used adjectively in the neuter form *aliquod*, and sometimes in the masculine and feminine forms. The same is true of *quidam* and *quisque* (4).

3. Besides the interrogative *quis* and its compounds, there is an interrogative adjective *quis* (which, what?) declined like the relative *qui*.

4. Besides *aliquis*, the most important indefinites are:

   *quidam*  *quaedam*  *quiddam*, or *quoddam*, certain one, certain.
   *quisquam* (wanting)  *quidquam*, any one (at all), no plural.
   *quisque*  *quaeque*  *quidque*, or *quodque*, each one, every.

5. *Quidam*, *quisquam*, and *quisque* are declined like the simple pronouns. *Quidam* changes *m* to *n* before *d*; *quendam*, etc., *quendam*, etc.

6. *Aliquis*, *some one*, *any one* (without emphasis); *quisquam*, *any one at all* (emphatic), also in negative and interrogative sentences. *Quis* after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, is indefinite, *any one*.

7. *Aliquis* means *some man*, I don't know who; *quidam*, a certain man, whom I know, but don't mean to describe.

280. **Examine the following:**

1. *Puer quī vēnit*, the boy who came.
2. *Puella quae vēnit*, the girl who came.
3. *Librī quōs legis*, the books which you read.
4. *Puellae quās vēdísti*, the girls whom you saw.

Compare the relative in each of the above examples with the noun to which it refers (called the antecedent) in respect, first to gender, and then to number.

Look now at the case of the relative in each of the examples, and compare the English with the Latin. Plainly, the case of the relative has nothing to do with that of the antecedent. It may be the same or different.

281. **Rule of Syntax.**—A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number.

---

1 As the *person* of the antecedent has no effect on the relative, it is wrong, though customary, to say "the relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person."
282. Examine the following:—

1. Ego qui vēnī, I who came.
2. Vōs qui vēnīstis, you who came.

Observe now the person and number of the verb in these two examples, and in the first two given in 280.

283. Rule of Syntax.—The verb of which a relative pronoun is the subject agrees in person and number with the antecedent of the relative.

2.

284. Exercises.


II. 1. What have you in your hand? 2. By whom was the Roman forum adorned with the prows of ships? 3. We see the general whom you praise. 4. He is rich who is contented. 5. He will be praised whose courage saved our country. 6. We love those whose manners are pleasing. 7. The boy has something in his hand. 8. Certain labors are pleasant to us. 9. We are the same to-day that we were yesterday. 10. What things are brought to us from Africa?

1 Potest esse, can be. 2 See 212. 3 Ablative of quisque. 4 Of whom. 5 The same...that, or same...as, idem...qui.
3.

285. EXERCISES.

Before trying to do the following exercises, review the declension of irregular adjectives (200, 201), and write out the declension of quidam, quisquam, and quisque.


II. 1. All animals that have blood have hearts. 2. We shall be the same to-morrow as we are to-day. 3. Is any animal more sagacious than the elephant? 4. We have five fingers on each hand. 5. Those have hope who have nothing else. 6. Many men build houses which they will never inhabit. 7. The moon sends upon the earth the light which she has received from the sun. 8. Cornelia had two sons, both of whom were killed. 9. Hector, by whose bravery many Greeks were slain, was himself killed. 10. Will not some friend relieve me of this burden?

286. VOCABULARY.

acciπō, 3, -cēπi, -ceptum [ad-cacciπō], tāke to, receive, accept. Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj. [Carthāgīnēs], of Carthage, Carthaginian. clārus, -a, -um, bright, famous.

bonum, -i, n., good thing, blessing. Carthagīnēs, -a, -ēs, Carthaginian.

decēptum [ad-acciπō], tāke to, receive, accept. clārum, -i, n., good, good fortune.

1 See p. 128, note 5. 2 See I. 4. 3 See 211, 212. 4 Aliud. 5 Of whom each. 6 See 128, 129.
contentus, -a, -um, adj., contented.  
cor, cordis, n., heart.  
crás, adv., to-morrow.  
digitus, -i, m., finger.  
duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., two (311. 4).  
ex-pūgnō, 1 [pūnna], take, capture.  
forum, -i, n., market-place, forum.  
Gājus Duilius, -i, m., Cāius Duilius.  
Hector, -oris, m., Hector, chief of the Trojan heroes.  
herī, adv., yesterday.  
hodiē, adv., to-day.  
labor, -ōris, m., labor.  
malum, -i, n., bad thing, evil.  
nēmō (-inis), n. & v. [nē, homo], no one. For genitive and ablative use nūllius, nūllō.  
parēns, -entis, m. & f., parent. (167. 1)  
proprius, -a, -um, adj., one's own.  
prudentia, -ae, f. [prūdēns], foresight, sagacity, wisdom.  
Remus, -i, m., Remus, brother of Romulus.  
re-portō, 1, bring back.  
Rhexa Silvia, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia.  
risus, -ūs, m. [rīdeo], laughter.  
Rōmulus, -i, m., Romulus, first king of Rome.  
rōstrum, -i, n., prow of a vessel.  
sidus, -eris, n., star, constellation.  
Themistoclēs, -is, m., Themistocles, a famous Greek.  
varius, -a, -um, adj., different, changeable, various.

CHAPTER XLIII. 1.  
REVIEW OF PRONOUNS.  
Review the paradigms.

EXERCISES.


---

1 See p. 128, note 5.  
2 Notice the order; quīque likes to stand after the reflexives.  
3 The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is some form of īs.
II. 1. She is the same that she always has been. 2. He will say the same things to-morrow as to-day. 3. Certain boys laughed out loud in school. 4. That friend of yours is a very wise man. 5. Those trees yonder are covered with leaves. 6. This man is praised by the citizens, that one is blamed. 7. The general himself led his brave soldiers. 8. The soldiers were led by the brave general himself. 9. Danger itself is pleasing to the brave. 10. Those who are most faithful to their friends are most dear to us.

2.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Some one has done this. 2. Yesterday a story was read to us by some one. 3. The slave killed himself together with his master. 4. My friend will migrate with me into Gaul. 5. The inhabitants of the city were frightened by the coming of the enemy. 6. Some bear thirst easily, others hunger. 7. The fruits of this tree are pleasing to me, for they are sweet. 8. Those trees are higher than these houses. 9. These towers are high, those are low. 10. Those maidens, whose modesty is known, are praised by all.

1 See p. 128, note 5. 6 See p. 87, note 3.
2 Plural. See 117. 7 See p. 87, note 4.
3 See p. 130, note 3. 8 See p. 87, note 5.
4 See 343. 9 See 275. 1 and 3.
5 See p. 87, note 4. 10 A form of is.
289.

**VOCABULARY.**

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj., unfavorable.

cachinnō, 1, laugh aloud. Cf. rideō.

cōram, prep. w. abl., in presence of.

cupīō, 3, -īvi, -ītum, desire.

dē-formis, -e, adj. [forma], misshapen, ugly, base, disgraceful.

dictitō, 1 [dicō], keep saying.

ece, interj., lo! see! see there!

egēns, -entis, adj., in want, needy.

e-ripiō, 3, -ui, ēreptum [rapiō], snatch away; seize and bear off.

famēs, -is, r., hunger, famine.

frondōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frōns], covered with leaves, leafy.

frūctus, -ūs, m., fruit.

Jōhannicus, -i, m., little John, Johnny, Jack.

migrō, 1, move from one place to another, migrate.

modestia, -ae, f., modesty.

narrō, 1, tell, relate, report.

praedicō, 1 [prae, before; dicō, -āre, make known], proclaim, boast. Cf. praedicō, predict.

satis, adv., enough.

ersiō, 4 [servus], be a slave to, serve (w. dat.).

sitēs, -is, r., thirst. (154.)

tolerō, 1, bear, endure.

turpītūdō, -inis, r. [turpis], ugliness, baseness.

3.

290.

**COLLOQUIUM.**

Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus.

_**R.**_ Tū, nisi fallor, cs Sōcratēs, ille Athēniēnsis. _unless_ I am mistaken.

_**S.**_ Rectē dīcis. Ego sum Sōcratēs, filius, ut ferunt, Sōphroniscī.

_**R.**_ Cūr dīcis ut ferunt? Nōnne rē vērā es filius illius? _in truth._

_**S.**_ Ipse quidem nesciō, Ō Rhadamanthe, cūjus sim filius. _indeed_ not know

_**R.**_ Num¹ mē lūdis, Sōcratēs? Cāvētō. Nōnne tē sapien-
tem dīxit ōrāculum? _mock_ _beware_ _oracle_

_**S.**_ Ita est; sed quā rē nōn intellegō, nisi quia mē ipse _yes_ _why_ understand

inscium perspicīō. _ignorant_ see plainly

---

¹ This word is used in asking questions when the answer _no_ is expected. It is not to be translated.
REVIEW OF PRONOUNS.

R. Quō modo actātem dēgisti?
how "pass"

S. Māgnā ex parte loquēbar māximēque dē virtūte
for the most part I used to talk especially
quacrerēbam.
inquired

R. Mihi dē virtūte explicātō, Sōcratēs; per breve tempus
I was able to tell

S. Êheu! Rhadamanthe, istiūs rei sum ignius, nam mihi
ciēre poterat nēmō.
was able to no one

R. Minimē sapiēns, Sōcratēs, tū mihi vidēris. At quid
seem but

hōc locō tibi est in animō facere?
see good to talk

S. Ante omnia, si vidēbitur, cum Hoinērō velim et Ulixē
and all else the righteous Gracciae principibus loquē.

R. Apage igitur ad istās mānēs.
be off then shades

4.

291.

FOR TRANSLATION.

THE BATTLE OF MARATHON, B.C. 490.

Hōc in tempore nūlla cīvitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō1 fuit
praeter Plataēnsēs. Ea2 mīlle misit militum. Itaque hōrum
adventū decem mīlia armātōrum3 complēta sunt, quae manus
mīrābili flagrābat pūgnandī cupiditāte. Quō factum est4 ut
plus quam collēgae Miltiādēs valēret.5 Ėjus ergō auctōritāte
impulsi6 Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe ēdūxerunt locōque7
idōneō castra fēcērunt. Deinde postērō dīe proelium

mīsērunt. Dātis, etsi nōn acquēm8 locum vidēbat suīs,9

1 Auxiliō fuit, was for assistance = assisted. See 344.
2 Supply civitās.
3 Armātōrum (participle as noun), of armed men.
4 Quō factum est, by which it was brought about = the result was.
5 Plus . . . valēret, had more influence.
6 Impulsi (participle from impellō) prompted.
7 Locō = in locō.
8 Acquēm, favorable.
9 Supply militibus.
CHAPTER XLIV. 1.

COMPOUNDS OF Sum.

292. Possum, posse, potui, —, be able, can.

Possum is compounded of potis, able, and sum. Potis is everywhere shortened to pot; then t is changed to s before s, and f is dropped after t.

INDICATIVE.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. I am able, can, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possum</td>
<td>possumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potes'</td>
<td>potestis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potest</td>
<td>possunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPER. I was able, could, etc.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poteram</td>
<td>poterâmus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fut. I shall be able, etc.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poterô</td>
<td>poterimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1 Eòque magis, and the more.
2 Subsidio: cf. auxili, first line, and note.
3 Venirent, should come.
4 Centum: supply milia.
5 Tantò plús valuerunt, were so much superior.
6 Virtute. See 259, 260.
7 Pröligaërint, they routed.
8 Petierint, fled to. See p. 101, note 1.
9 Pügnâ: ablative after the comparative nóbilius. (212.)
10 From prösternö.
**COMPOUNDS OF Sum.**

**Perf.** *I have been able, could, etc.*
- potuī
- potuimus
- potuerim
- potuerimus

**Plup.** *I had been able, could have, etc.*
- potueram
- potuerāmus
- potuissem
- potuissēmus

**Fut. Perf.** *I shall have been able, etc.*
- potuerō
- potuerimus

**INFINITIVE.**
- **Pres.** posse, *to be able.*
- **Perf.** potuisse, *to have been able.*

---

293. Prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, ——, benefit.
Prōsum is compounded of prōd (old form of prō), for, and sum. The d of prōd is retained before e.

**INDICATIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Singular.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Plural.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres. I benefit, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pres. I benefit, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-sum</td>
<td>prō-sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōd-es</td>
<td>prōd-estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōd-est</td>
<td>prō-sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōd-eram</td>
<td>prōd-erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōd-erō</td>
<td>prōd-erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-fuī</td>
<td>prō-fuimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plup.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plup.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-fueram</td>
<td>prō-fuerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong></td>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-fuerō</td>
<td>prō-fuerimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Pres.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Perf.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prōd-esse</td>
<td>prō-fuisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fut.** prō-futūrus esse

**PARTICIPE.**
- **Fut.** prō-futūrus

The other compounds of sum are inflected like the simple verb.
294. Learn the tenses of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive of possum and prōsum.

295. Rule of Syntax.—The compounds of sum, except possum and absum, all take the dative; but insum is often followed by in with the ablative, and intersum by inter with the accusative.

2.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Cornelia was able to train her sons wisely. 2. All can be good citizens. 3. Hannibal was not able to take the city. 4. In Hannibal there was great cunning and bravery. 5. Hannibal was long absent from his own country. 6. He commanded armies in Spain and Italy. 7. He was present at many battles, and was the terror of the Romans. 8. He benefited his country in many ways. 9. But his enemies in his own land injured him. 10. Scipio defeated him in battle in Africa. 11. He survived this defeat many years. 12. His name will never lack renown.

1 For him. 2 See 47. 3 Compare auxiliō, 291, first line, and note. 4 Ways = things. See 259, 260. 5 Ablative without in. 6 Accusative. 7 Renown will never be wanting to his name.
297. VOCABULARY.

ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, be away, absent (ā or ab w. abl.).
ad-sum, -esse, fūi (also āfuī), be present, stand by, side with,
dē-sum, -esse, fūi, be wanting, lack.
in-sum, -esse, fūi, be in, among.
inter-sum, -esse, fūi, be present at, among.
ob-sum, -esse, fūi, be against, opposed to, injure.
possum, posse, potuī, be able, can.
prae-sum, -esse, fūi, be before, at the head of, command.
prō-sum, prō-esse, prō-fūi, be useful, benefit.
super-sum, -esse, fūi, remain over, survive, exist.

callidītās, -ātis, r. [callidus], shrewdness, cunning.
cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō, fall], falling down, mischance, misfortune.
clādēs, -īs, r., destruction, defeat.
dūī, adv., long, a long time.
dulcis, -e, adj., sweet, pleasant. Cf. suāvis.
fāma, -ae, f., rumor, fame, renown.
ne-que, conj., and not, nor; neque ... neque, neither ... nor.
parō, 1, make ready, prepare, get.
patria, -ae, f., native land, country.
praesidium, -i, n. [praē, sedeō], defence, help, garrison.
praeestāns, -tis, adj. [praē-stō, stand before], pre-eminent, distinguished.

CHAPTER XLV. 1.

DEPONENT VERBS.

First and Second Conjugations.

298. Deponent verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meaning of the active. There are deponents of each of the four regular conjugations:

Admīrāmur opera Deī, we admire the works of God.
Miserōs tuēbimur, we shall protect the wretched.
Audī multa, loquere paucā, listen much, say little.
Caesar prōvinciam sortītus est, Caesar obtained (by lot) a province.
299. Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of amō and moneō. (86, 112).

The principal parts of deponent verbs are thus given:

admīror, admīrārī, admīrātus (sum).
tueor, tuērī, tuētus (sum).
loquor, loquī, locūtus (sum).
sortior, sortīrī, sortītus (sum).

300. EXERCISES.


II. 1. Who does not admire the beauty of the stars? 2. Other nations accompanied the Cimbri across the Rhine. 3. They wandered far¹ and wide¹ through Gaul and Spain. 4. The Romans wondered at the great bodies of the Germans. 5. Certain animals imitate human voices. 6. We were contemplating that beautiful likeness. 7. The general promised the soldiers² a great reward. 8. He³ is a bad man who does not respect any one.⁴ 9. Children respect their parents, slaves fear their master.

301. VOCABULARY.

admīror, 1, wonder at, admire.
Alexander, -dri, m., Alexander, king of Macedon.
beneficium, -i, n., benefit, favor.
caelum, -i, n., sky, heavens.
Cimbri, -ōrum, m., Cimbri, a German tribe.
comitor, 1 [comes, -itis], accompany, attend.
cōn-fiteor, 2, -fessus, confess.

¹ Longē lātēque.
² Not accusative.
³ Is.
⁴ Not any one = no one.
DEPONENT VERBS.

contemplor, 1, look at, observe.
cursus, -üs, m. [currō, run], running, course.
Dārēus, -i, m., Darius, Persian king.
dominor, 1 [dominus], be a lord and master, rule.
facinus, -ōris, n. [faciō], deed, crime. Cf. scelus.
Germānus, -a, -um, adj., German.
imitor, 1, imitate.
magnitūdō, -inis, f. [māgnus], greatness.
mercōr, 2, be worthy of, deserve.
per, prep. w. acc., through, by.
pollēcor, 2, promise.
pulchritūdō, -inis, f. [pulcher], beauty.
stella, -ae, f., star.
tueor, 2, tuitus and tūtus, watch, defend. Cf. dēfendō.
vagōr, 1, go to and fro, wander.
vastō, 1, lay waste, ravage.
vēcor, 2, reverence, respect.

sidus (286), a star, a great star, a constellation.
stella, a star as a bright heavenly body.

2.

302.

COLLOQUIUM.

PATER ET FILIOLUS.

P. Ades, mī filiōle, et mihi libellum ostentā.
F. Eccum, cāre pater, sī libellum Latinum vidēre cupidīs.
P. Quod pēnsum tībi hodiē imperāvit praeceptor?
F. Pēnsum verbōrum dēpōnentium quae ad conjunctiōnem prīmam atque secundam pertinent.

P. Quam ob rem sīc appellantur ista verba?
F. Quia formam actīvam et sīgnificātiōnem passīvam plērumque dēposuērunt. Sic nōs praeceptor docuit.

P. Quod autem pēnsum in crāstīnum diem imperāvit praeceptor?
F. Ad hunc addidit praeceptor alia dēpōnentia. At tū, mī pater, Latīnae linguæ jam puer studēbās?
DEPONENT VERBS.

P. Certē, filiole, idque vehementer.
   right hard

F. Num ego, sī diligenter didicero, ēruditus, ut tū, sīam?
   learn learned as become

P. Procul dubió. At jam tibi eundum est dormitum.
   you must go to bed

CHAPTER XLVI. 1.

DEPONENT VERBS.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

303. Examine the following:

1. Útor vestrā benignitāte, I avail myself of (use) your kindness.
2. Abūitur patientiā nostrā, he abuses our patience.
3. Lūx quā fruimur ā Deō nōbīs datur, the light which we enjoy is given us by God.
4. Fungor vice cotis, I serve as (discharge the office of) a whetstone.
5. Māgnā praedā potitus est, he got great booty.
6. Lacte et carne vescēbantur, they lived upon milk and flesh.

Compare the translation of the examples with the Latin. Observe that the direct object of the verb, or of the preposition closely connected with the verb in English, is represented in Latin by the ablative case.

304. Rule of Syntax.—The deponents útor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds, take the ablative.

305. Examine the following:

1. Meminit præteritōrum, he remembers the past.
2. Haec ōlim meminisse juvābit, to remember these things will one day give pleasure.
3. Tōtam causam oblūtus est, he forgot the whole case.
4. Tōtīus causae oblūtus est, he forgot the whole case.

Observe that in the above examples the genitive is used in 1 and 4, the accusative in 2 and 3.

**306. Rule of Syntax. — Verbs of remembering and forgetting take the genitive or accusative.**
1. Neuter pronouns and adjectives are commonly put in the accusative. **Recordor** regularly takes the accusative.

**307.** Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of *regō* and *audiō*. (180, 223).

**308. EXERCISES.**

II. 1. Alexander and his companions entered Asia. 2. They suffered both hunger and thirst. 3. He obtained great glory by his victories. 4. He did not forget the words of his master. 5. For he had been the pupil of a wise man. 6. The soldiers follow their general. 7. They are bad men who forget benefits. 8. We can learn to endure all things. 9. Who does not enjoy the light which is given us by God? 10. The boys faithfully discharged their duty.

**309. EXERCISES.**
I. 1. Caesar, Pompējus, Crassus, imperium inter sē partī sunt. 2. Caesar Galliam prōvinciae sortitus est. 3. Saec-

1 *Armed.* 2 *Imperative.* 3 *Present infinitive of patīor.* 4 *Et.* 5 *Hū.* See 270. 2.

Π. 1. Soldiers often try the fortune of war. 2. The leaders had divided among themselves the property¹ of the enemy. 3. The Rhone rises not far from the sources of the Rhine. 4. The Rhine, which rises in the Alps, flows into the ocean. 5. The best friends share perils with friends. 6. Who possessed the kingdom after Alexander? 7. We will make trial of our valor. 8. They got possession of the camp of the enemy. 9. Who gets by lot Sicily (as) his province?²

310. VOCABULARY.

adipiscor, 3, adeptus, get, obtain. 
Cf. potior.

castra, -ōrum, n. (pl.), camp.

Crassus, -ī, m., Crassus, a rich Roman, contemporary of Cæsar.

ex-perior, 4, expertus, make trial of, test.

frōns, frontis, f., brow, forehead.

fruor, 3, fruītus and frūctus, enjoy.

fungor, 3, functus, perform, discharge.

imperium, -ī, n. [imperō], command, authority, power.

in-gredior, 3, gressus [gradior], enter.

mentior, 4, lie, deceive.

obliviscor, 3, oblitus, forget.

ōceanus, -ī, m., ocean.

officium, -ī, n., duty.

optimē, adv., most excellently, best.

orīor, 3, ortus, rise, appear, begin.

partior, 4 [pars], divide, share.

patior, 3, passus, bear, suffer.

Pompeius, -ēs, m., Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.

posteā, adv., afterwards.

potior, 4, become master of, get.

Cf. adipiscor. [march.

proficiscor, 3, -fectus, set out, province.

rēgnum, -ī, n., kingdom.

sequor, 3, secūtus, follow.

sortior, 4, draw lots, obtain by lot.

Sulla, -ae, m., Sulla, a Roman general and statesman.

¹ Compare I. 5. ² Predicate accusative. ³ See vocab. p. 247.
NUMERALS.

CARDINALS.

80. octoginta
90. nonaginta
100. centum
101. centum unus, or
101. centum et unus
200. ducenti, -ae, -a
300. trecenti
400. quadringenti
500. quingenti
600. sescenti
700. septingenti
800. octingenti
900. nonagenti
1,000. mille
2,000. duo milia
100,000. centum milia

ORDINALS.

octogesimus
nonagessimus
centesimus
centesimus primum, or
centesimus et primum
ducentessimus
trecentessimus
quadringentessimus
quingentessimus
sescentessimus
septingentessimus
octingentessimus
nongentessimus
millessimus
bis millessimus
centiess millessimus

1. Cardinal numbers answer the question how many? Ordinals, which in order?

2. The cardinals from quattuor to centum, inclusive, are indeclinable: quattuor hominēs, four men; quattuor hominum, of four men.

3. Unus is declined like bonus, except that it has genitive and dative singular ūnīs, ūnī, like alius (201).

4. Duo and tres are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. duorum</td>
<td>duarum</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. duobus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. duōs, duo</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. The hundreds, ducenti, etc., are declined like the plural of bonus.

6. Mille is indeclinable in the singular, and is sometimes an adjective and sometimes a noun: mille hominēs, a thousand men; mille hominum, a thousand (of) men. The plural has the forms milia, milium, milibus, and is always a noun: tria milia hominum, three thousand men (three thousands of men).
7. The ordinals are declined like bonus.
8. Other kinds of numerals are the distributives: singulī,-ae,-a, one each, binī,-ae,-a, two each, etc.; and the numeral adverbs: semel, once, bis, twice, etc.

312. Examine the following:—
1. Decem annōs Trōja oppūgnābatur, Troy was besieged for ten years.
2. Turris alta est centum pedēs, the tower is a hundred feet high.

The accusative annōs denotes duration or extent of time; pedēs, extent of space. The accusative, then, is used to answer the question how long? or how far? (in time or space), and may be called the Accusative of Extent.

313. Rule of Syntax.—Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.

2.

314. Exercises.

II. 1. Romulus, the first king of Rome, reigned thirty-seven years. 2. This house is fifty-nine\(^1\) feet long and forty-eight feet wide. 3. The river is fourteen feet deep and ninety-two feet wide. 4. With\(^2\) the ancient Romans September was the seventh month; with us September is the ninth month. 5. The Roman consuls held power for one year.

\(^{1}\) See p. 143, note.  \(^{2}\) Apud, with accusative.
6. In the five hundred and fiftieth year of the city Scipio was consul. 7. Five and twenty languages were known to King Mithridates. 8. In the first month of the year there are thirty-one days. 9. A Roman legion had five thousand foot-soldiers and three hundred horse-soldiers.

315. VOCABULARY.

annus, -i, m., year.
auris, -is, r., ear.
December, -bris, m. [decem], December. Often as adj.
Diāna, -ae, r., Diana, goddess of the chase. [as adj.
Februārius, -i, m., February. Oft.
Īdūs, -uum, r., plur., the Ides of the month. (244. 1.)

lingua, -ae, r., tongue, language.
Mārtius, -i, m. [Mārs], March. Often as a i
Mithridātēs, -is, m., Mithridates, king of Pontus.
ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face.
September, -bris, m. [septem], September. Often as adj.
spatium, -i, n., room, space, period

CHAPTER XLVIII. 1.

316. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Volō, velle, volū, ——, be willing, will, wish.
Nōlō, nōlle, nōlū, ——, be unwilling, will not.
Mālō, mālle, mālū, ——, be more willing, prefer.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. volō nōlō mālō
vīs nōn vīs māvīs
vult nōn vult māvult
volumus nōlumus mālumus
vultis nōn vultis māvultis
volunt nōlunt mālunt
Imper. volēbam nōlēbam mālēbam
Fut. volam nōlam mālam
Perf. volūi nōluī māluī
Plup. volueram nōlueram mālueram
F. P. voluerō nōluerō māluerō
IRREGULAR VERBS: Volō, Nōlō, Mālō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. velim nōlim mālim
velīs nōlīs mālīs
velit nōlit mālit
velīmus nōlīmus mālīmus
velītis nōlītis mālītis
velint nōlint mālint
Imper. vellem nōllem māllem
vellēs nōllēs māllēs
vellet nōllet māllet
vellēmus nōllēmus māllēmus
vellētis nōllētis māllētis
vellent nōllent māllent
Perf. voluerim nōluerim māluerim
Plup. voluissem nōluissem māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. (Wanting) nōli (Wanting)
nōlite
Fut. (Wanting) [nōlītō, etc.] (Wanting)

INFINITIVE.

Pres. velle nōlle mālle
Perf. voluisse nōluisse māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. volēns nōlēns (Wanting)

317. Learn the tenses of the indicative and infinitive of volō, nōlō, and mālō, and the present imperative of nōlō.

2.

318. EXERCISES.

IRREGULAR VERBS: Ferō.

amō, love, not implying and not excluding esteem; the common word. diligō, love unselfishly and with esteem; more restricted in meaning than amō.

volō means both less and more than wish, namely, consent and will; very much used.

dēsiderō means wish ardently, with the notion (which volō has not) of lacking or missing the thing much desired; more restricted in meaning than volō.

3.

FOR TRANSLATION.

Multī hominēs volunt quidem rēctē facere, sed nōn faciunt; nam velle et facere nōn idem est. Saepe homo rēctē agere vult, sed vīrēs dēsunt. Multī peccāta sua excūsāre quam dépōnere mālunt. Saepe aliēna peccāta vituperāre quam nostra corrīgere mālumns. Multī suā sorte nōn sunt contenū, sed aliēna appetere mālunt. At cūr nōn fēliciter vivere māvis? Fēlix is est quī rēctē agere vult rēctēque agit.

CHAPTER XLIX. 1.

321. THE IRREGULAR VERB Ferō.

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum: bear, carry, endure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INDICATIVE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. ferō</td>
<td>ferimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fers</td>
<td>feris, or-ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert</td>
<td>fertur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPER. ferēbam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. feram</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. tulī</td>
<td>fēra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUT. tuleram</td>
<td>lātus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P. tulerō</td>
<td>lātus erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. feram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPER. ferrem</td>
<td>ferar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. tulerim</td>
<td>lātus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUT. tulissem</td>
<td>lātus essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ferar
fērre
lātus sim
lātus essem
## IMPERATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. feŕ</td>
<td>ferte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. fertō</td>
<td>fertōte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fertō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## INFINITIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ferre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tulisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>lātūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PARTICIPLES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ferēns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>lātūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## GERUND.

- G. ferendī
- D. ferendō
- Ac. ferendum
- Ab. ferendō

## SUPINE.

- Ac. lātum
- Ab. lātū

### 322. Compounds of ferō are conjugated like the simple verb. Observe the changes suffered by certain of the prepositions in the following:

- **ab-** auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum.
- **ad-** adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum (adl).
- **com-** cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (conl).
- **dis-** differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum.
- **ex-** efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum.
- **in-** īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum (inl).
- **ob-** offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum.
- **sub-** sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum.

### 323. Learn the tenses of the indicative, the imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of ferō.

---

1 For ferre; dicō, dūcō, faciō, ferō, have imperative present second singular dic, dūc, fac, fer.
IRREGULAR VERBS: Ferō.

324. EXERCISES.
   I. 1. Aufert, aufertur. 2. Auferet, auferētur. 3. Abs-
   tulit, ablātus est. 4. Conferrē, conferrī. 5. Conferrunt,
   confertuntur. 6. Conferten, conferentur. 7. Contulerant,
   collātī erant. 8. Distulērunt, dilātī sunt. 9. Distulerit,
   dilātus erit. 10. Distulisse, dilātus esse. 11. Differēbant,
   differēbantur.
   II. 1. We bear, we are borne. 2. We were bearing, we
   were borne. 3. We have borne, we have been borne.
   4. We shall bear, we shall be borne. 5. We had borne,
   we had been borne. 6. Bear thou, bear ye. 7. To offer,
   to be offered. 8. Ye shall offer, ye shall be offered. 9. To
   have offered, to have been offered. 10. Ye offer, ye will
   offer. 11. Ye are offered, ye will be offered.

325. EXERCISES.
   I. 1. Ferte patienter laborēs. 2. Bene ferre māgnam
   fortūnam discē. 3. Ferte patienter quae mūtārī nōn
   possunt. 4. Nōn omnis ager qui seritūr fert frūgēs. 5. Be-
   nīgnun rēgem nōn tulistis; jam ferum et barbarum fertōte.
   6. Nōlite differre pēnsum quod hodiē facere potestis. 7. Im-
   perātor militibus dēfessī auxilium attulit. 8. In unum locum
   collātum est ex agrīs omne frūmentum. 9. Lōnga nōbis
   est omnis mora quae gaudia differt. 10. Caesar omnibus
   qui contrā sē arma tulerant veniam dedit.
   II. 1. They bore labor with patience. 2. They did not
   endure a good king; now they are enduring a bad one.
   3. We cannot put off our tasks. 4. We shall learn to bear
   our good fortune well. 5. They bore with patience that
   which they could not change. 6. The robbers bore off the

1 What might be substituted for the adverb? See 144, 145.
2 See p. 130, note 3. 3 Tertiary. 4 Omit. 5 Id.
booty which they had seized. 7. Do not¹ bring me that which I do not want. 8. Delays which postpone our joy are always tedious. 9. The townsmen carried their all² with them out of the town.

326. VOCABULARY.

ad-ferō (afferō), adferre, at-tulī, adlātum, bear to, bring.
a-ferō, auferre, abstuli, ablā-tum [ab(s)], bear off, carry away.
auxilium, -ī, n., help, aid.
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign, barbarous.
benignus, -a, -um, adj., kind, good.
eōn-ferō, eōnferre, contulī,
collātum (conlātum), bring together, collect; sē eōnferre, be-take one's self.
dif-ferō, differre, distulī, dilā-tum [dis, apart], bear apart, scatter, put off, postpone.
off-ferō, offerre, extulī, ēlātum [ex], bear out, bring forth.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, cruel.
frāgēs, -um, f., plur., fruits.
gaudium, -ī, n. [gaudeō, re-joice], joy, delight.
in-ferō, inferre, intulī, illātum
(inlātum), bear in, cause; bellum inferre, to make war, w. dat.
jam, adv., already, now, at last.
mora, -ae, f., delay.
off-ferō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum
[ob, before], present, offer.
patienter, adv. [patiēns], pa-ticuly, with patience.
sērō, 3, sēvī, satum, sow, plant.
suffero, sufferre, sustulī, sub-
lātum [sub], undergo, endure.
venīa, -ae, f., indulgence, kind-
ness, mercy.

CHAPTER I. 1.

327. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Eō, īre, īf [īvī], ītum, go.
Fiō, fierī, factus sum (supplies pass. to faciō), be made, become.

INDICATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eō</th>
<th>Fiō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eō</td>
<td>īmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īs</td>
<td>ītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>eunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td>fiunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiō</td>
<td>fimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fis</td>
<td>fītis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Compare I. 6. ² Their all, omnia sua.
329. EXERCISES.


II. 1. That has been done which you wished. 2. My friends, you become wiser by old age. 3. Men never become good by chance. 4. Who will cross the river with me?³ 5. The generals crossed the mountains with a large part⁴ of their forces. 6. Light become the burdens that are patiently borne. 7. Our friends have gone away, but they will return. 8. The people passed by many worthy men. 9. The inhabitants of the city went out with their horses and wagons. 10. The generals return to⁵ their country with prisoners and booty. 11. Do not⁶ cross the very deep river.

330. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Septīēs Marius, qui Cimbrōs et Teutōnēs duōbus ācerrimīs proelīs vicit, cōnsul factus est. 2. Sōcratēs aequō animō diem suprēmum obiit. 3. Ariovistū cōpiae intrā annōs quattuordecim tectum nōn subierant. 4. Autumnō multae avēs in aliās terrās proficiscuntur, at vēre novō

¹ Fērē is often thus placed between an adjective and its noun. ³ See 265. 3.
² Nōn nunquam, not never = sometimes. ⁴ See p. 21, note 1.
⁵ To = into. ⁶ See 318. I. 5 and 6.
redent. 5. Abeunt omnia unde orta sunt. 6. Alexander cōnsiliō fortitūdineque omnēs anteībat; omnēs labōrēs subībat.

II. 1. In winter the days become shorter and the nights longer. 2. After the battle many perished of cold and hunger. 3. Cicero was made consul by the Romans. 4. By the prudence (cōnsilium) and valor of Scipio, Hannibal was compelled to return into Africa. 5. We ought to meet our last day with equanimity. 6. Alexander came off victorious from all his battles.

331. VOCABULARY.

ab-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go off, come off, go away. (327. 2.)
acequus, -a, -um, adj., level, equal; calm.
ante-eō, -ire, -iī, —, go before, surpass.
apud, prep. with acc., with, in, near, among.
Ariovistus, -i, m., Ariovistus, king of a German tribe.
autumnus, -i, m., autumn.
ēgō, 3, -ēgī, -ēctum [com, agō], drive together; compel.
cōpia, -ae, f., power, abundance, wealth; plur. troops, forces.
dēbeō, 2, -ui, -itum, owe, ought.
ex-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go out.
ferē, adv., nearly, for the most part.
intrā, prep. with acc., within.
Marius, -i, m., Marius, a famous Roman general.
nāscor, 3, nātus, be born.

ob-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go towards, meet.
Parus, -i, m., Paros, an island in the Aegean Sea. (11. 4.)
per-eō, -ire, -iī, —, perish.
praefer-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go by, pass by, omit.
red-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, return.
re-ferrō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, carry back.
rūrīsus, adv. [re-vorsus, re-vertō], turned back, back, again.
septīces, num. adv. [septem], seven times.
sub-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go under, enter, undergo.
tectum, -i, n., [tegō, cover], covering, shelter, roof.
Teutoñes, -um, m., the Teutons, a German tribe.
trāns-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go over, cross.

1 See 260.
2 Compare I. 4.
3 Ablative.
4 Compare I. 1; also 47.
5 Compare I. 2.
6 Victor.
3.

332. COLLOQUIUM.

TITVRUS ET MELIBOEUS.

T. Aliquis jānuam pulsat. Ī, puer, aperi jānuam.
[Meliboeus trīstī vultū passibus tardīs introīt.]
Salvē, amīce, diū mē nōn adīstī. Čūr iste vultus trīstis?

how do you do

M. Ėheu! mī Tityre, abēō ē mēā patriā.

T. Čūr abīs? Quō abībis? Nōli relinquire haec arva
dulcia.

what would you have me do

M. Quid tībi vīs? Meōs agrōs mīlitibus impuls dōnāvit
Octāviānus. Māgna pars gregum interīt. Ipse perīē.

wicked has given

Octāviānus. Māgna pars gregum interīt. Ipse perīē.

T. Minimē, amīce; adī ad Octāviānum; ille est benignus,
neque vult tē perīē. Tū agrōs recipīēs.

neque vult tē perīē. Tū agrōs recipīēs.

M. Parvae spēs mīhi sunt redeundī; tamen ībō, ut tū
monēs; Octāviānō ad pedēs mē prōiciam.

T. Et redībis in agrōs tuōs; redībit pāx aurea. Valē, mī
Meliboece, es bonō animō.

keep up your courage

M. Et tū valē, bone Tityre.

---

CHAPTER LI. 1.

PREPOSITIONS.

333. Thus far several prepositions have been used in the exer-
cises, some followed by the accusative and some by the ablative.
These are the only cases in Latin that follow prepositions.

PREPOSITIONS FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE.

ā (ab, abs), away from, by.
absque, without.
cōram, in presence of.
cum, with.
dē, from, concerning.
ē (ex), out of, from.
prae, before, in comparison with.
prō, before, for.
sine, without.
tenus, as far as, up to.
1. In, meaning into, to, towards, for, that is after verbs denoting motion, takes the accusative.

2. In, meaning in, on, at, that is after verbs denoting rest, takes the ablative. See 334.

3. Sub, under, up to, after verbs of motion, takes the accusative; after verbs of rest, the ablative.

4. Remember that all prepositions except the ten mentioned, and in and sub, are followed by the accusative only.

**Expressions of Place.**

334. Examine the following: —

1. In oppidō, in the town.
2. In nāvī, on shipboard.
3. Ad montem, to the mountain.
4. Ex agrīs, from the fields.
5. In Italīa, in Italy.
6. In Italiam, to Italy.
7. Ex Italīa, from Italy.
10. Thūrīs, at (in) Thurii.

Observe the ways of denoting the place in, on, at, to, from which. In English we always use a preposition with the noun of place, as the examples show. So in Latin (see examples 1–7), except with names of towns. For these a rule may be inferred from the examples 8–14.

335. Rule of Syntax. — With names of towns —

1. The place in or at which is expressed by the locative. (See 14, 2; 40; 175.)

2. The place to which, by the accusative without a preposition.

3. The place from which, by the ablative without a preposition.

---

1 Except in the case of the word home, after a verb of motion.

2 Names of small islands are often treated like names of towns.

3 This accusative may be called the Accusative of Limit, because it denotes the limit, or end, of motion.

4 This ablative is the ablative of separation. (128, 129, 130.)
336. Domus, home, house, and rūs, the country, have the construction of names of towns:

domī, at home.

domum, (to) home.

domō, from home.

rūrī, in the country.

rūs, to (into) the country.

rūre, from the country.

2.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. The consul set out from Rome with a large army. 2. We have removed from the city into the country. 3. Then the general retreated into Campania. 4. I have lived in Athens three years. 5. Tarquin remained at Cumae a long time. 6. Scipio defeated Hannibal at Zama. 7. Regulus returned from Africa to Rome. 8. Afterwards he was sent back from Rome to Carthage. 9. Caesar carried on war in Gaul eight years. 10. Cicero was born at Arpinum. 11. The consul proceeded to Athens with his army. 12. From Athens he sailed to Italy. 13. Do you remain (imperative) at home; I will return to the army. 14. Shall you come home soon?

1 From prōcēdō, perfect tense.
2 See I. 7, and 239.
3 See 313.
4 See 272. II. 6.
EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE.

338. VOCABULARY.

appellō, 1, address, call, name.
Arpinum, -i, n., Arpinum, a town in Italy.
Athēnae, -ārum, f., plur., Athens.
Carthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage, a city in Africa.
Coriolānus, -i, m., a surname of C. Marcius, a Roman consul.
Cūmae, -ārum, f., plur., Cuma, a town in Campania.
dē-migrō, 1, emigrate, remove.
dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor], office of dictator, dictatorship.
dignitās, -ātis, f. [dignus, worthy], worth, dignity, office.
ē-vādō, 3, ēvāsi, ēvāsum, go forth, escape.
infestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile, troublesome, dangerous.
ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō, speak, plead], orator, ambassador.
Porsena, -ae, m., Porsena, an Etruscan king.
pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus [fateor], acknowledge, confess, declare.
re-mittō, 3, -misi, -missum, send back.
sēdēs, -is, f. [sedeō, sit], seat, abode.
Tarquinius, -i, m., Tarquin, a Roman king.
trā-iciō, 3, jēcī, jectum [trāns, jeciō], throw across, pass over, cross.
tum, adv., then, at that time.
Zama, -ae, v., Zama, a town in Africa.

339. FOR TRANSLATION.

The Battle of Cannae, B.C. 216.


1 For the case, see 343.
2 Fabius Maximus, whose policy had been one of prudence, or rather, of extreme caution.
3 Impetuous.

4 His colleague unwilling = against the wishes of his colleague. See 412.
5 To the Romans, dative with adversi.
6 Both.
160  ADDITIONAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

pulverem addūns¹ adversī essent.² Victus caesusque est Rōmānus exercitus; nusquam graviōrē vulnerē afflīcta est res pública.

[Continued on p. 177.]

---

CHAPTER LII.

ADDITIONAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

340. Examine the following:—

1. Alter cōnsulum, one of the consuls.
2. Ŭnus mīlitum, one of the soldiers.
3. Quis vestrum? who of you?
5. Satis pecūniae, enough (of) money.
6. Ŭnus ex mīlitibus, one of the soldiers.
7. Minimus ex illīs, the youngest of them.

The first five of the examples illustrate what is called the Partitive Genitive, the word in the genitive denoting a whole, and the word which it limits a part of that whole; 6 and 7 illustrate another way of expressing the partitive idea.

341. Examine the following:—

1. Catilīna fuit ingeniō malō, Catiline was (a man) of bad disposition.
2. Icius summā nōbilitāte fuit, Icius was (a man) of the highest rank.
3. Puer sēdecim annōrūm, a boy of sixteen years.
4. Vestis māgni pretī, a garment of great value.
5. Vir summæ virtūtis, a man of the highest courage.

The above are examples of the Descriptive Ablative and the Descriptive Genitive. Observe that in each instance the ablative or genitive is limited by an adjective, and that the adjective and noun together denote a quality or characteristic of that which is described.

¹ Present participle of addīō.
² Were an annoyance.
342. Examine the following:

1. Régi serviō, I serve the king.
2. Cīvitātī prōdest, he benefits the state.
3. Caesārī placuit, it pleased Cæsar.
4. Frātrī persuādet, he persuades his brother.
5. Crēde mihi, believe me.

Observe that the verbs, which in English have a direct object, are followed in Latin by the dative (the case of the indirect object). Such verbs should be carefully noted as they occur in the exercises. They may be summed up in the following—

343. Rule of Syntax.—Many verbs signifying to please or displease, benefit or injure, command or obey, serve, resist, believe, threaten, persuade, and the like, take the dative.

344. Examine the following:

1. Māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit, it was of great service to our men.
2. Est mihi cūrae, it is (for) a care to me.
3. Equitātum auxiliō Caesārī mīserant, they had sent cavalry to aid Cæsar (for aid to Cæsar).
4. Quīnque cohōrtēs castrīs praeṣidiō relinquit, he leaves five cohorts to defend the camp (for defence to the camp).

Observe in each of the above sentences two datives, one translated (literally) with for, the other with to. In 1 and 2, ūsuī and cūrae are like the predicate nominative, which is often used where we might expect this dative; in 3 and 4, auxiliō and praeṣidiō denote a purpose. This dative for which is sometimes called the Dative of Service. The two together are sometimes called the Double Dative.

Observe instances of the foregoing constructions as they occur in the exercises and reading lessons.
CHAPTER LIII.

DERIVATION.

345. Some derivations have been indicated in the vocabularies by separating the parts of compound words, and, beginning with 221, by putting words in brackets. The bracketed words, however, are not to be understood as the primitives or originals of the words against which they stand, as is customarily the case in lexicons and special vocabularies, but that they are connected with them in formation from a common root or stem. The habit of observing such relationships is the important thing. The following list is selected from previous vocabularies for further study of the subject:—

1. amō, love; amīcus, loving, friendly; amīcitia, friendship; in-imīcus (for in-amīcus), unfriendly, hostile.

2. ager, field, land, soil; agri-cola (colō, cultivate), one who cultivates the soil, farmer; agri-cultūra, cultivation of the soil, agriculture. Colō also means dwell, hence incola, inhabitant. Meaning of incolō?

3. cīvis, citizen; cīvilis, pertaining to a citizen; cīvitās, the condition of a citizen, or a body of citizens, state. Like cīvilis, form and define adjectives from the stems of puer and hostis.

4. regō, rule; rēx (rēgs), ruler, king; rēgīna, ruler, queen; rēgnum, kingdom; rēgnō, be king, reign; rēgula, rule.

5. faciō, do; faciūs, thing done, deed; facilis (that may be done), easy; difficilis (for dis-facilis), not to be done, difficult.

6. nōscō, know; nōmen (that by which a thing is known), name; nōminō, v., name; nōbilis (that can be known), well known, noble, cf. facilis.

7. fugā, flight; fugiō, flee. liber, adj., free; liberō, v., free. metus, n., fear; metuō, v., fear. laus, n., praise; laudō, v., praise. timor, n., fear; timeō, v., fear. discō, learn; discipulus, learner. dō, give; dōnum, gift. moveō, move; mōtus, motion.

8. aurum, gold; aureus, of gold, golden. līgnum, wood; līgneus, of wood, wooden.
ferrum, iron; ferreus, of iron, iron.
argentum, silver. Form an adjective from the stem of argentum, and define it.

9. alō, nourish; alimentum (that which nourishes), food, provisions.
moneō, remind; monumentum (that which reminds), monument.
örnō, adorn; meaning of ornamentum?

10. pulcher, beautiful; pulchritūdō, beauty.
fortis, brave; fortitūdō, bravery.
turpis, base; turpitūdō, baseness.
altus, high. Form a noun from the stem of altus, and define it.

11. īgnāvus (not busy), idle; īgnāvia, idleness.
memor, mindful; memoria (mindfulness), memory.
piger, lazy; pigritia, laziness.
prūdēns, wise, prudent; prūdentia, wisdom, prudence.
sapiēns, wise; sapientia, wisdom.
amīcus, friend; amīcitia, friendship.
Form a noun from the stem of inimīcus, and define it.

12. equus, horse; eques, horseman.
pēs (stem ped), foot; pedēs, foot-soldier.

13. arō, v., plough; arātrum, n. (thing to plough with), plough.
(rōdō, gnaw); rōstrum (that which gnaws), beak, snout, hence beak of a ship.

14. vir, man; virtūs, manliness, virtue.
servus, slave; servitūs, slavery.
cōnsul, consul; cōnsulātus, office of a consul, consulship.
magister, master; magistrātus, office of a magister, magistracy, also magistrate.

15. perīculum, danger; perīculōsus, full of danger, dangerous.
frōns, leaf; frondōsus, covered with leaves, leafy.
studium, zeal; meaning of studiōsus?

16. audō, dare; audāx, daring.
rapiō, seize; rapāx, grasping.
teneō, hold; meaning of tenāx?

17. scribō, write; scripтор, writer.
vincō (victum), conquer; vīctor, conqueror.
dēfendō, defend; dēfensor, defender.
From stem of amō, love, form a word meaning lover; from stem of audiō, hear, in the same way, a word meaning hearer.
18. ūllus, any; nūllus, not any.
scīō, know; nescīō, know not.
19. homo, man; hūmānus (belonging to a man), human.
mors, death; mortālis (belonging to death), mortal.
alius, another; aliēnus (belonging to another), another’s.
20. Observe also the force of the various prefixes, ā, ad, dé, dis, in,
prae, prō, re, sub, etc., as in ā-mittō, ac-cēdō, dē-scendō,
dī-mittō, in-ferō, prae-sum, prō-cēdō, re-ferō, sub-eō, etc.

---

CHAPTER LIV. 1.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES: PRACTICE ON FORMS.

346. Learn the subjunctive of sum (73) and its compounds (292, 293).
The chief use of the subjunctive is in subjoined, that is, dependent, clauses.

347. Examine the following:—

1. Audiō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit, I hear where he is, has been or was, is going to be.
2. Audīvī ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit, I have heard where he is, has been or was, is going to be.
3. Audiam ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit, I shall hear where he is, has been or was, is going to be.
4. Audīverō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit, I shall have heard where he is, has been or was, is going to be.
5. Audiēbam ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset, I heard where he was, had been, was going to be.
6. Audīvī ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset, I heard where he was, had been, was going to be.
7. Audīveram ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset, I had heard where he was, had been, was going to be.
Notice what tenses are used in the principal clauses of each of the preceding groups of examples. Those in the first group—the present, perfect definite, future, and future perfect—are called primary or principal tenses. Those in the second group—the imperfect, perfect indefinite, and the pluperfect—are called secondary or historical tenses.

Observe also that primary tenses of the subjunctive are used in the first four, secondary in the last three.

348. Rule of Syntax.—Primary tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and secondary follow secondary.

Observe that the subjunctive in the foregoing examples is translated like the indicative.

349. Examine the following:—

1. Nēmō adest quīn sit fortis, no one is present who is not brave.
2. Quis adest quīn sit fortis? who is present who is not brave?
3. Nēmō dubitāt quīn sit fortis, no one doubts that he is brave, or his being brave.
4. Nōn dubium est quīn sit fortis, there is no doubt that he is brave, or of his being brave.
5. Nōn dubitō quīn sit fortis, I do not doubt that he is brave, or his being brave.

Observe (1) that the subjunctive follows quīn; (2) that quīn is used after negative expressions and questions that expect a negative answer; (3) that the subjunctive clause with quīn (compounded of quī, who, and nē, not) may be variously rendered.

2.

350.

EXERCISES.


1 That is, the perfect translated with have or has.
2 That is, the perfect translated without have or has.
fuissent fortēs? 6. Nēmō dubitāverat quīn adfuisset; ad-
fuissent. 7. Nōn est dubium quīn possit; possint; potuerit;
potuerint. 8. Quis dubitābat quīn posset? possent? potui-
praefueris; praefueritis. 10. Quis dubitāverat quīn āfuisset?
āfuissent?

II. 1. I do not doubt that he is present; has been present;
is absent; has been absent. 2. Who doubted that he could? they
could? we could? you could? 3. They do not doubt that he is at
the head of (praesum); has been at the head of. 4. Who has
doubted his surviving? their surviving? 5. Who doubted their
injuring? having injured? 6. There is no doubt that he can; we
can; you can; they can. 7. There was no doubt that he could; I
could; they could.

3.

351. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of amō (86)
and moneō (112).

1. Observe that in the active voice the imperfect subjunctive
can be formed readily from the present infinitive, and the pluper-
flect subjunctive from the perfect infinitive. Compare the perfect
subjunctive with the future perfect indicative.

352. Examine the following:—

Sē armant ut pūgnent, they arm themselves that they may fight,
in order that they may fight, to fight, so as to fight, in order to
fight, for the purpose of fighting.

Observe that the various equivalents of ut pūgnent have a
common notion or idea, that of purpose.

353. Rule of Syntax. — Ut with the subjunctive
may be used to denote a purpose, and may be vari-
ously translated.

354. Review the indicative and imperative of eō, go (327).
355. EXERCISES.
I. 1. It ut mōnstrēt et moneat. 2. Ībat ut mōnstrāret et monēret. 3. Iit ut mōnstrēt et moneat. 4. Iit ut mōn-
strāret et monēret. 5. Ībunt ut mōnstret et moneant. 6. Iērunt ut mōnstrārent et monērent. 7. Ierant ut mōn-
strārent et monērent. 8. Nōn dubitāvī quīn mōnstrāvisset et monuisset. 9. Quīs dubitāverat quīn mōnstrāvissēnt
et monuissent? 10. Nēmō dubitāvit quīn mōnstrāvissēmus et monuissēmus. 11. Nōn est dubium quīn mōnstrēmus et
moneāmus.

II. 1. He goes to see and praise. 2. They go for the purpose of seeing and praising. 3. We will go in order to
see and praise. 4. Who will not go that he may see and praise? 5. You will go to see and praise. 6. They have
gone to see and praise. 7. He has gone for the purpose of seeing and praising. 8. He went in order to see and praise.
9. Go (plur.) to see and praise. 10. He was going that he might see and praise. 11. Who doubts his having seen
and praised? 12. No one doubted that they had seen and praised.

356. EXERCISES.
I. 1. Eī (eīs, mihi, nōbīs) imperat ut¹ —
cōnētur, cōnentur, cōner, cōnēmur.
2. Eī (eīs, mihi, nōbīs) imperābat ut —
cōnārētur, cōnārentur, cōnārer, cōnāremur.
3. Quīs dubitāt quīn —
cōnātus sit, cōnātī sint, cōnātus sim, cōnātī simus?
4. Nēmō dubitābat quīn —
cōnātus esset, cōnātī essent, cōnātus essem, cōnātī
essēmus.

¹ Translate thus: He orders him to try (that he try); them to try (that they try).
5. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monēt ut—
   tueātur, tueantur, tuear, tueāmur.
6. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monēbat ut—
   tuērētur, tuērentur, tuērer, tuērēmur.
7. Quis dubitat quīn—
   tuitus sit, tuitī sint, tuitus sim, tuitī simus?
8. Nēmō dubitābat quīn—
   tuitus esset, tuitī essent, tuitus essem, tuitī essēmus.

II. 1. They will order him (them, me, us) to imitate.
2. They have ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate.
3. Who doubts his (their, my, our) having imitated?
4. They ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate. 5. Nobody doubted his (their, my, our) having imitated. 6. They advise him (them, me, us) to promise. 7. They advised him (them, me, us) to promise. 8. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had promised.

357. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of regō (180), audiō (223), capiō (235).

358. The conjunction nē, in order that not, that not, in order not to, so as not to, lest, is used to denote a negative purpose, just as ut denotes a positive purpose. See 352, 353.

359. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Eum (eōs) monēt ut—
   regat, regātur, audiat, audiātur,
   regant, regantur, audiant, audiantur.
2. Eum (eōs) monēt ut—
   regat, regātur, audiat, audiātur,
   regant, regantur, audiant, audiantur.
3. Eum (eōs) monēbat ut—
   regeret, regerētur, audīret, audīrētur,
   regerent, regerentur, audīrent, audīrentur.

1 Imitate the arrangement in I. 2 Dative. 3 That is, that he, they, I, we, have imitated.
4. Eum (eōs) monuit ut —
   regeret, regerētur, audīret, audīrētur,
   regerent, regerentur, audīrent, audīrentur.
5. Tē (vōs) monet nē —
   capiās, capiātis, capiāris, capiāminī.
6. Mē (nōs) monuit nē —
   capiam, capiāmus, capiar, capiāmur.
7. Mē (nōs) monēbat nē —
   caperem, caperēmus, caperer, caperēmur.
8. Mē (nōs) monuit nē —
   caperem, caperēmus, caperer, caperēmur.

II. 1. They advise him (them) —
     to lead, to be led, to find, to be found.
2. They warn him (them) —
     not to receive, not to be received.
3. They will advise him (them) —
     to lead, to be led, to find, to be found.
4. They were warning him (them) —
     not to lead, find, receive,
     not to be led, be found, be received.
5. Who doubted that he (they) —
     had led, had found, had received,
     had been led, been found, been received?

6.

360. Learn the subjunctive of eō (327), and ferō (321).

361. EXERCISES.

II. 1. He commands that he (they, I, we) go; bear; be borne. 2. He was commanding that he (they, I, we) should go; bear; be borne. 3. There is no doubt of his (their, my, our) having gone; borne; been borne. 4. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had gone; borne; been borne.

7.

362.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. The ambassadors beg the senate to render aid to their king. 2. The ambassador begged the senate to render aid to his king. 3. Nobody doubts that Hannibal is brave. 4. Nobody doubted that Hannibal had fought bravely. 5. They did this that they might surround the enemy. 6. This they do in order to surround the enemy. 7. Scipio begs his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 8. Scipio begged his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 9. It turned out that the soldier received a wound on the head. 10. We will draw up the soldiers on a hill to try the fortune of war.

¹ Nē quis, lest any one = that no one.
² After verbs meaning to happen, to turn out, and the like, ut means that, but not in order that.
³ Suus, because their means their own, and not of them.
⁴ Suus.
363. VOCABULARY.

circum-venio, 4, -veni, -ventum, surround.
collis, -is, m., kill. Cf. mons.
cōnor, 1, attempt.
cūrō, 1 [cīra], care for, take care.
di-mittō, 3, -misi, -missum, send away, send off.
cē-dicō, 3, -dixi, -dictum, speak out, declare, proclaim.
cē-venio, 4, -veni, -ventum, come forth, turn out, happen. Cf. accidō.
extrā, prep. w. acc., without, outside of. Cf. intrā.
frangō, 3, frēgi, fractum, break.
Hasdrubal, -alis, m., Hasdrubal, brother of Hannibal.
hortor, 1, urge, encourage.
in-dicō, 3, -didi, -dīsum [cadō], fall into, happen, befall.

Manlius, -i, m., Manlius, a Roman general.
mōnstrō, 1, show, point out.
ob-ligō, 1, bind, put under obligation, oblige.
occidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsum [ob, caedō, cut], cut down, kill.
occupō, 1 [ob, capio], take possession of, seize.
orbus, -a, -um, adj., bereaved, childless.
ōrō, 1 [ōs, mouth], pray, beg.
pĪbus, -bis, f., the common people.
seānatus, -ās, m. [senex], council of elders, senate. (345. 14.)
sub-dūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, draw from under, draw up.
uxor, -ōris, f., wife. Cf. conjunct.
vis, vis, f., strength, power. (262.)

CHAPTER LV.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: RELATIVE OF PURPOSE.

[It is suggested that the turning of English into Latin be now deferred till after the Reading Lessons, pp. 211-222, have been finished.]

364. In all the Latin sentences in the preceding lesson in which ut and nē are used with the subjunctive, except 362. 1, 9, the dependent clause expresses a purpose. And, on the other hand, in the English sentences all the dependent clauses expressing purpose ("to render aid," "not to carry," etc.) had to be turned into Latin by ut or nē with the subjunctive. But the Latin often expresses a purpose by means of a relative pronoun followed by the subjunctive. See the first six sentences below.

365. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ancus légātum mittit ut rēs repetat. 2. Ancus légātum mittit quī rēs repetat. 3. Lēgātū vēnērunt ut pācem

II. 1. A horse was given to the boy by his father, for him to ride. 2. A father sent a messenger to Rome to speak to his son. 3. A father sends a messenger to Rome to speak to his son. 4. Romulus makes proclamation that no one shall leap over his wall. 5. Romulus proclaimed that no one should leap over his wall. 6. We will warn them not to leap over our walls. 7. Romulus sent messengers to invite neighboring people to his games. 8. The father will give his son a horse for him to ride. 9. Who doubts that a kind father gives his son books? 10. Nobody doubted that the father had given his son many things.

366.

VOCABULARY.

al-loquor, 3, locūtus [ad], speak to, address.
Ancus, -ī, m., Ancus, a Roman king.
asylum, -ī, n., a place of refuge, asylum.
Cato, -ōnīs, m., Cato, a famous Roman censor.
di-rūō, 3, -rūī, -rūtum, tear asunder, destroy.
equitō, 1 [eques], act the eques, ride.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis], bordering on, neighboring.
imperō, 1, order, command, with dative. Cf. jubeō with acc.
lūdus, -ī, m. [lūdō], game, play.
nūntius, -ī, m., bearer of news, messenger.
re-petō, 3, -ivī, -ii, -itum, seek again, demand back; rēs repetere, demand restitution.
trān-siliō, 4, -iī, and -iī, — [saliō, leap], leap over or across.

1 That he might ride.
2 Translate in two ways.
3 See 362. I. 6, and note.
4 Present subjunctive.
6 Many things, multa.
CHAPTER LVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: Ut and Nē.

367. The subjunctive with ut to denote purpose has been illustrated (352). But the subjunctive with ut has other uses.

368. Examine the following:—

1. Tantus est mīlitum arđor ut ad bellum dūcantur, so great is the ardor of the soldiers that they are led to war.
2. Accidit ut nōn domī essem, it happened that I was not at home.
3. Fabricius adeō inops décessit ut nihil reliquerit, Fabricius died so poor as to leave nothing.

In these examples the dependent clause denotes a result. Compare the translation of ut and the subjunctive in purpose clauses and in result clauses. That not in result clauses = ut nōn. Cf. 358.

369. Still another use of the subjunctive with ut and nē is illustrated in the following sentences:—

1. Timeō ut veniat, I fear that he is not coming, or will not come.
2. Timeō ut vēnerit, I fear that he has not come.
3. Timēbam ut vēnisset, I feared that he had not come.
4. Timeō nē veniat, I fear that he is coming, or will come
5. Timeō nē vēnerit, I fear that he has come.
6. Timēbam nē vēnisset, I feared that he had come.

An inspection of the foregoing examples shows that ut and nē seem sometimes to exchange meanings.

After verbs of fearing, ut is translated that not, and nē, that.

Observe that in 1 and 4 the present subjunctive may be translated as a future.

370. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Pompējus ita ēgit ut ā Sūlla dīligerētur.  2. Is, ut Sūllae" subvēnīret, mīlitēs collēgit.  3. Posteā in Siciliam profectus est, ut eam prōvinciam ā Carbōne recipere.
4. Catilinae exercitus adeo àcriter dînicâvit, ut nêmô super-
esset. 5. Accidit ut esset plêna liûna. 6. Atticus sic
Græcê loquèbâtur, ut Athênìs nâtus vidèretur. 7. Atticus
Athênìs ìta vîxit, ut omnibus civibus esset càrissimus.
8. Nôn dubitô quîm nostrî mílitès hostès superâverint.
10. Timeô ut sustînèas labôrês. 11. Metuô nê malum
13. Quis metuit nê malum cônsilium capiam?

Point out the purpose clauses in the above.

II. 1. The boy so acts that he is loved by all. 2. They
so acted that they were loved by all. 3. He will so act as to
be1 loved by all. 4. He has so acted as to be loved by
all. 5. They will not doubt our having come.2 6. They
had not doubted our having come.3 7. I fear that you are
not well. 8. I feared that you were not well. 9. I fear
that you are sick. 10. I was afraid that you had been sick.
11. The enemy are fighting so spiritedly that no one will
survive.4 12. They have fought so sharply that not one has
survived. 13. We will set out for5 Sicily in order to receive6
that province.

371. VOCABULARY.

ac-cidō,3 -cidî, — [ad, cado],
fall upon, fall out, happen. Cf.
évenio and incidō.
ad-eō, adv. (to this), thus far, so,
so very.
Atticus, -i, m., Atticus, a friend of
Cicero.
Carbō, -onis, m., Carbo, a Roman.
Catilina, -ae, m., Catiline, a fa-
mous Roman conspirator.

col·ligō, 3, -légî, -lëctum [com,
legô], collect. Also conligō.
di-micō, 1, fight, contend.
Græcê, adv. [Græcus], in Greek.
loquor, 3, locûtus, speak, talk.
sub·venîō, 4, -vëni, -ventum,
come to the aid of; aid, assist,
with dative. Cf. succurrō.
sustînèo, 2, -tinui, -tentum [sub,
teneo], hold up, bear, endure.

1 As to be, ut, etc.
2 That we have come.
3 That we had come.

4 Pres. subj.
5 See I. 5, and note.
6 Not infinitive.
CHAPTER LVII. 1.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: *Cum.*

372. The subjunctive occurs very frequently in dependent clauses beginning with *cum,* meaning (1) *when,* *while,* *as,* of time; (2) *since,* *because,* *as,* of cause or reason; (3) *although,* of concession:

1. *Cum Servius in domo Tarquinii esset, mirabile accidit,* *while Servius was in the house of Tarquin, a wonderful thing happened.*

2. *Cum Tarquiniius occisus esset, ejus uxor populum allocuta est,* *when Tarquin had been killed, his wife addressed the people.*

3. *Tullia, cum domum rediret, super corpus patris carpentum egit,* *Tullia, as she was returning home, drove her wagon over the body of her father.*

An inspection of the above examples shows that—

(1) The tenses of the subjunctive are the imperfect and pluperfect.
(2) The *cum* clause marks the time of the act of the principal clause, the verb of which is in the perfect.
(3) The sentences may be called narrative sentences.

373. Rule of Syntax.—*Cum* temporal, that is, *cum* in narrative clauses, is followed by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to mark the time of the action in the principal clause.

374. Examine the following:—

1. *Cum hunc Iregi senatus repugnaret, Caesar rem ad populum detulit,* *since the senate opposed this law, Caesar referred the matter to the people.*

2. *Cum de improvisato venisset, Remi legatos miserunt,* *since he had come unexpectedly, the Remi sent ambassadors.*

3. *Cum vita metus plena sit, amicitias parate,* *since life is full of fear, form friendships.*

4. *Cum me interrogaveris, respondebi,* *as you have asked me,*

    I will answer.
5. Nihil me adjūvit cum posset, he gave me no aid (aided me in nothing), although it was in his power.

Notice that—
(1) All the four tenses of the subjunctive are used.
(2) The **cum** clause states the cause or reason of the act of the principal clause; or denotes a concession, indicated in English by though, admitting that, etc.

**375. Rule of Syntax.** — **Cum** causal or concessive is followed by the subjunctive in all its tenses.

1. **Cum** followed by the present or perfect subjunctive is almost always causal, and may be translated since or as; followed by the imperfect or pluperfect it is very often temporal.

2. **Cum** temporal and the subjunctive can often be translated in some other way better than by when or as with the indicative. Thus, in **372. 2**, we might translate, **After the killing of Tarquin**, etc.; and in **3**, **Tullia, returning home**, or **Tullia, on her way home**.

**376. Exercises.**


II. 1. When one had begun, the rest became (were) silent. 2. Pyrrhus, having seen the bravery of the Romans, spoke these words. 3. Since he has seen the bravery of the Romans, he raises his hands to heaven. 4. Since night is

1 Since these things are so = such being the case.
2 **Cum** may be translated as temporal or causal: on the approach of night; or, since night was approaching.
3 See **373**.
4 Pyrrhus, when he had seen.
THE SUBJUNCTIVE: Cum.

approaching, we will go off. 5. When our friends had arrived, we went to Boston. 6. On the arrival of our friends we went to Boston. 7. While Cæsar was embarking in a boat, no one recognized him. 8. As Cæsar was alone, he was not recognized. 9. As I was telling him a story, he suddenly laughed. 10. As they had prudence, we did not hesitate.

377. VOCABULARY.

āgnōscō, 3, -gnōvi, -gnitum, [ad, (g)nōscō, know], recognize.
ap-propinquo, 1 [ad], approach.
Bostonia, -ae, r., Boston.
cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., the rest.
circum-duōcō, 3, -xi, -ductum, lead around.
cōn-scendō, 3, -dī, -scensus
[scandō, climb], ascend, embark, go on board.
dubitō, 1 [dubius], doubt, hesitate.
dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful.
gaudeō, 2, gāvisus sum, be glad, rejoice.
im-prō-visō, adv. [videō], unexpectedly.
in-vicem, adv., by turns, in turn.
jubeō, 2, jussi, jūsum, bid, order. Cf. imperō.
mortuus, -a, -um [P. of morior], dead.
nāvica, -ae, r. [nāvis], little vessel, boat.
ordior, 4, orsus, begin, undertake.
pergō, 3, perrēxi, perrēctum [per, regō], go on, continue.
taceō, 2, tacui, tacitum, be silent, say nothing about.
tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātum, raise, lift up.
tot, adj., indecl., so many. Cf. quot.

378. FOR TRANSLATION.

The Battle of Cannae.—Continuea

Aemilius Paullus telis obrutus cecidit. Quem cum mediē
in pūgnā sedentem in saxō opplētum cruōre cōnspexisset qui-

1 The as of reason, or of time?
2 Four common verbs, audēō, dare, gaudeō, rejoice, soleō, be accustomed, fidō, trust, have the passive form in the perfect, and hence are called semi-deponents.
3 Translate first mentally, taking the words as they stand, rendering cum, when; then recast this preliminary translation, beginning with cum quidam tribūnus, and rendering quem, him.

Follow this method, when a Latin sentence appears difficult; but keep a sharp eye on the terminations of the words.

CHAPTER LVIII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

379. Examine the following:—

Direct.
1. Quis est? who is he?
2. Ubi sumus? where are we?
3. Cūr rīdēs? why do you laugh?
4. Quem vīdistī? whom have you seen?

Indirect.
Sciō quis sit, I know who he is.
Sciō ubi sīmus, I know where we are.
Sciō cūr rīdeās, I know why you laugh.
Sciō quem vīderis, I know whom you have seen.

1 See 340. 5.
2 Supply dīxit or respondit. But it is livelier without a verb.
3 Perhaps the literal translation of this phrase is, be thou blessed in (or for) thy courage; macte for mactus, because ā is here almost more of a vocative than a nominative.
4 Supply nē after cavē, beware lest you lose = beware of losing.
5 Connects mūniunt and firment.
6 Imperative from patior.
7 Account for the case.
8 From occidō. But occisi, in the next clause, from occidō.
9 For; in expresses purpose.
Compare each of the foregoing examples in the left hand column with the corresponding one on the right. Observe that each dependent clause in the right hand column begins with an interrogative word, and contains the substance of a question, though not a question in form. Such dependent clauses are called **Indirect Questions.** Observe the mood, and how it is translated.

**380. Rule of Syntax.** — **Indirect questions take the subjunctive.**


**381. Exercises.**

[Read again the remarks and rule, p. 165.]


III. 1. He sees who is walking; has walked. 2. They see who are walking; have walked. 3. We shall see who walk; have walked. 4. We knew why he was laughing; had laughed. 5. You knew why I was laughing; had laughed.

---

1 See p. 150, note. 2 See 279. 3. 3 Compare 365. I. 2 and 4. 4 Into what parts = in what direction.
6. They wondered why he was praised; had been praised.
7. They will wonder why I am praised; have been praised.
8. Do you not wonder why we are praised; have been praised?
9. I wonder whether he has been admonished; is being admonished.
10. They wondered whether we were admonished; had been admonished.

382. VOCABULARY.
interrogō, 1, ask, inquire.
Nāsica, -ae, m., Nasica, surname of one of the Scipios.
num,1 interrog. adv., whether, introducing indirect questions.
rogō, 1, ask, question.
sciō, 4, scivi, scītum, know.
soleō,2 2, solitus, be accustomed.
speculor, 1, spy out, watch.
tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe.

interrogō, ask a question, inquire, and nearly limited to that sense.
rogō, ask a question, but much more commonly ask a favor, make a request.
quaerō, ask a question, but much used in the sense of seeking to gain or to know, searching into.

---

CHAPTER LIX. 1.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: Wishes and Conditions.

383. Examine the following:—

1. Utinam pater veniat! would that father would come! I wish father would come! O that father would come!
2. Si pater veniat, laetus sim, if father should come, I should be glad.
3. Utinam pater adesset! would that father were here!
4. Si pater adesset, laetus essem, if father were here, I should be glad.
5. Utinam pater adfuisset! would that father had been here!
6. Si pater adfuisset, laetus fuissem, if father had been here, I should have been glad.

1 Introducing direct questions, it indicates that the answer no is expected, but does not usually admit of translation. 2 See p. 177, n. 2.
WISHES AND CONDITIONS.

(1) In 1 and 2 what time do the words would come, should come, should be, point to? Plainly not to the past, nor to the instant present, but vaguely to the future; and this vague future is expressed in Latin by the present subjunctive. The wish and the condition referring to the future may be fulfilled; the father may come.

(2) In 3 and 4 the wish and condition refer to the present; and this present is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive. The wish and condition are plainly contrary to what is the fact; the father is, in fact, not present.

(3) In 5 and 6 the tense of the subjunctive offers no difficulty. The wish and condition are plainly contrary to what was the fact; the father was, in fact, not present.

384. Rule of Syntax.—In wishes and conditions the present subjunctive is used of what may come true, the imperfect subjunctive of what is not true, the pluperfect subjunctive of what was not true. The same mood is regularly employed in the conclusion of such conditional sentences.

The indicative is not used in wishes. The use of the indicative in conditional sentences is easily understood.

385. Examine the following:—

1. Si pater adest, bene est, if father is present, it is well.
2. Si pater aderat, bene erat, if father was present, it was well.
3. Si pater aderit, bene erit, if father shall be present,1 it will be well.

Observe that in examples 1 and 2 a condition is stated without implying anything. In example 3, as the time is future, that which is supposed may be fulfilled. This form, then, of stating a supposition is almost exactly equivalent to that of the present subjunctive in 383; it is only a livelier way of putting it.

1 In English we commonly use a present form in such conditions that refer to the future. Thus we say, If he is (to-morrow, next week, etc.) present, it will be well. Do not be deceived, when translating into Latin, by this apparent present. See if the conclusion contains a future.
386.

EXERCISES. 1

1. 1. Si victoriām certam videam, nunquam pūgnem.
2. Si mē virum bonum judicāres, nōn mē corrumpere vellōs.
3. Dictātor, sī adfuisset, rem nōn melius gessisset.
4. Varrō, sī Carthāgīniēnsium dux fuisset, temeritātis poenas dedisset. 4
5. Sī patrem tuum eras videam, quid dicat?
7. Sī rectē faciās, laudēris. 8
8. Sī maneat Mārcus, gaudeāmus; sīn autem cat, tamen cum laudēmus. 9
10. Utinam frāter meus vīveret classemque iterum dūceret!
11. Utinam māter nōbis fābulam nārret!
12. Utinam tēcum in agrīs ambulāvīsem!

II. 7
1. Would that I were walking in the fields with you to-day!
2. I wish you had been walking with me yesterday.
3. O take a walk with us in the fields to-morrow!
4. If you should see victory certain, my friend, should you not fight?
5. I should not now be setting out if Cæsar did not order it.
6. If you were acting rightly, you would be praised.
7. If you had acted rightly, you would have been praised.
8. I wish you would act rightly, so as to be praised.
9. If we should see a lion, we should flee.

to come, which would be expressed by the present subjunctive.

1 In translating these sentences, render the present subjunctive in such a way as to indicate vaguely future time; thus, videam... pūgnem, should see... should fight.
2 Compare 383. 4, and read again 386 (2).
3 Notice the position of this word, which is the subject of gessisset. It may be translated as it stands, first.
4 Given punishments of = paid the penalty for.
5 If a lion were coming, not were

6 See 265. 3.
7 In turning these sentences into Latin, do not be misled as to the real time of the verbs; were walking, in the first sentence, denotes present time. Read again the examples, 383, and the remarks. See also the varied translation of the first example.
8 Compare l. 12.
9 Compare 383. 1.
10 Ut. See 352.
10. I wish I had seen a huge lion. 11. If my brother\(^1\) were living, he would now be commanding the fleet. 12. Would that your brother were alive!

### 387. Vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ac-cëdō</td>
<td>3, -cēssi, -cēssum [ad]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cor-rumpō</td>
<td>3, -rūpī, -ruptum [com]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dicō]</td>
<td>chief magistrate, dictator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immānis, -e, adj.</td>
<td>huge, immense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūdicō, 1 [jūdex]</td>
<td>judge, deem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēctē, adv. [rēctus]</td>
<td>rightly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sin, conj. [si, nē]</td>
<td>but if, if however, if.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temeritās, -ātis, f. [temere]</td>
<td>chance; rashness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uti-nam, adv.</td>
<td>would that, O that, I wish that.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 388. Colloquium.

**Johannes et Jacobus.**

**Jo.** Dic mihi, Jacōbe, unde veniās, quid ĕgeris. [Have been doing]

**Ja.** Rūre veniō, ubi fēriārum partem ēgī. Et tū?

**Jo.** Ego iter cum parentibus fēcī, neque scīō quandō domum revertar. [When return]

**Ja.** Utinam ego quoque iter faciam! Si parentēs adēsent, iter mēcum facerent.

**Jo.** Ego itineris diūturnitāte sum défessus, et gaudērem si in scholā essem. [Length]

**Ja.** Veni mēcum in scholam et ūnā ēdiscāmus. [Together let us learn]

**Jo.** Tēcum libenter in scholam ībō, sed cōgnōscere velim quī sit praeceptor. [Know should like]

**Ja.** Praeceptor est vir doctissimus. Vīm Latīnī scīt, atque semper est benīgnus, mōrōsus nunquam. [Know very much]

**Jo.** Quid tē docet?

\(^{1}\) Imitate the order in 1. 3 and 4; the subject might, however, be placed after si.

Jo. Multa dē interrogationibus indīrectīs audīvī, neque unquam intellegere potuī. Fēcitne praeceptor ut tū īsta intellegerēs?

Ja. Sānē, mī amīce, et ego, ut opinor, faciam ut tū quoque eadem intellegās. Sī dīcam, Ubi est frāter tuus? interroga-tum sit dīrectum; sīn autem, Nesciō ubi sit frāter, interrogationum sit indīrectum. Intellegisne?

Jo. Satis intellegō. Sed in hunc diem hāctenus.

CHAPTER LX.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE.

389. Learn the future imperative, active and passive, of the regular and irregular verbs, and review the present imperative.

390. In the last lesson occurred the first illustrations of the subjunctive not in dependent clauses, that is, in wishes and in the principal clauses of conditional sentences. The subjunctive is similarly used in commands and appeals, and when so used is called the Hortatory Subjunctive.

391. Examine the following paradigms: —

Commands and Appeals.

Positive.

moneam, let me advise.
monē, or moneās, advise.
\{ moneat, \} let him advise, or
\{ monuerit, \} he shall advise.
moneāmus, let us advise.
monēte, advise.

\{ moneant, \} let them advise,
\{ monuerint, \} or they shall advise.

Negative.

nē moneam, let me not advise.
nē monueris, do not advise.
nē moneat, \{ let him not, or he
nē monuerit, \} shall not, advise.
nē moneāmus, let us not advise.
nē monueritis, do not advise.

nē moneant, \{ let them not, or
nē monuerint, \} they shall not, advise.
(1) Observe that positive commands and appeals are expressed by the subjunctive only, except in the second person; and negative commands and appeals, by the subjunctive with nē.  

(2) Observe also that the present and perfect subjunctive, in the third person, are used without essential difference of meaning; and that in negative commands and appeals in the second person, the perfect only is given.

(3) The future imperative is mostly confined to laws and maxims: *Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelītō, thou shalt not bury a dead man within the city. Percontātōrem fugitō, nam garrulus idem est, avoid a questioner, for he is a babbler too.*

(4) The preceding paradigms, with the meanings, should be thoroughly committed to memory.

**392. EXERCISES.**


II. 1. They shall not send a messenger. 2. Let no one touch the fourth part. 3. Touch not the fourth part of the

---

1 Prohibitions are more commonly expressed by nōli (nōlite) with the infinitive. See 318. I. 5 and 6.

2 This form of the subjunctive in this use is here called the perfect, in deference to custom: it is really the subjunctive of the future perfect.

3 The imperative so used is not common, and not to be imitated.

4 Compare 365. 1. 2 and 4.

5 *Omnia sua, their all.*

6 See 265. 3.

7 Let no one. See 279. 6.

8 Nē with perfect subjunctive.

9 See I. 12.

10 Express in two ways.
booty. 4. Let the pupils listen attentively to the words of the master. 5. Do not listen,² boys, to the counsels of the bad. 6. Write daily to your parents what² you are doing. 7. Carry your books home³ with you and study diligently. 8. Do not forget¹ what⁴ has been said to you to-day. 9. Touch not¹ wine; let us not touch wine; they shall not touch wine. 10. Let us go out and carry our all with us.

393. VOCABULARY.

at, conj., but. Cf. autem. (214.)
audeō,² 2, ausus sum, dare, be bold.
cōn-ficīō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [com, facīō], make, accomplish, carry out.
cotidiē, adv. [quot, diēs], daily.
falsus, -a, -um, adj. [fallō, de-ceive], deceptive, false.
in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [caveō], incautious, heedless.
re-stō, 1, restītī,—, stay behind, remain.
tangō, 3, tētīgī, tactum, touch.

at, but on the contrary, but for all that.
sed, but, without special emphasis.
autem, but, often to be rendered however; weaker than at or sed.

394. FOR TRANSLATION.
MĀRCUS PORCIUS CATŌ, PUER.

M. Porcius Catō jam puer⁶ invīctum animī rōbur ostendit. Cum in domō Drūsī avunculī suī ēducārētur, Latīnī dē civi-tāte impetrāndā⁷ Rōman vēnērunt. Popēdius, Latīnōrum princeps, qui Drūsī hospes erat, Catōnem puerum rogāvit, ut Latīnōs apud avunculum adjuvāret. Catō vultū cōnstantī

¹ Express in two ways.
² Compare I. 10.
³ See 336.
⁴ Id quod.
⁵ See p. 177, note 2.
⁶ Jam puer, already a boy = even in boyhood.
⁷ Dē civitāte impetrāndā, respecting the citizenship to be ob-tained = to obtain citizenship.
negāvit id sē factūrum.\textsuperscript{1} Iterum deinde aec saepius interpellatus\textsuperscript{2} in prōpositō perstitit. Tunc Popēdius puerum in excelsam aedium partem levatūm tenuit,\textsuperscript{3} et sē abjectūrum\textsuperscript{4} inde minatus est, nisi precibus obtemperaret; neque hōc metū\textsuperscript{5} ā sententiā eum potuit dimovēre. Tunc Popēdius exclamāsse\textsuperscript{6} fertur: \textsuperscript{7} "Grātulēmur\textsuperscript{8} nōbis;\textsuperscript{9} Latīnī, hunc esse tam parvum; sī enim senātor esset,\textsuperscript{10} nē spērāre quidem\textsuperscript{11} jūs\textsuperscript{12} civitātis licēret.\textsuperscript{10}

---

CHAPTER LXI.

THE INFINITIVE.

395. Learn the infinitives of the regular and irregular verbs. (86, 112, 180, 223, 235, etc.)

396. Examine the following:

1. Errāre est hūmānum, to err is human.
2. Possum vidēre, I am able to see.
3. Volō legere, I wish to read.
4. Eam sequī sē jubeō, he orders her to follow him (self).
5. Sāturnus in Italiam vēnisse dīcitūr, Saturn is said to have come into Italy.

Observe that in each sentence the infinitive is used in Latin precisely as in English. This use of the infinitive, as offering no difficulty, has been tacitly illustrated in some of the foregoing exercises.

\textsuperscript{1} Negāvit . . . factūrum, denied himself to be going to do it = refused to do it.
\textsuperscript{2} Perf. part. See amātus, p. 34.
\textsuperscript{3} Puerum . . . levatūm tenuit, held the raised-up boy = raised up and held the boy.
\textsuperscript{4} Sē abjectūrum, that he would throw (him) down.
\textsuperscript{5} Hōc metū, by this fear = by fear of this.
\textsuperscript{6} Exclamāsse = exclamāvisse.
\textsuperscript{7} Fertur = dīcitūr.
\textsuperscript{8} Grātulēmur, let us congratulare. See 391.
\textsuperscript{9} Nōbis. See 343.
\textsuperscript{10} Esset . . . licēret. See 383.
\textsuperscript{11} Nē . . . quidem, not even.
\textsuperscript{12} Jūs civitātis. Cf. civitāte, line 2.
EXERCISES.


II. 1. Pyrrhus wanted to bribe Fabričius. 2. Fabricius could not⁴ be turned from (the path of) honor. 3. Why did you begin to weep? 4. Did Hannibal know how⁵ to conquer? 5. Tarquin was said to have besieged Rome. 6. Rome is said to have been besieged. 7. Seeing is believing.⁶ 8. The consul was ordered⁷ to tear down the bridge. 9. The bridge is said to have been torn down. 10. It is pleasant⁸ to live for (one’s) friends. 11. We intend to tear down the bridge. 12. He is said to have departed from Italy.

VOCA/BULARY.

a-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, turn away from, avert. 
credō, 3, -dī, -ditum, trust, believe, v. dat. (343.)
decēt, 2, decuit, —, imper. (p. 200), it is becoming, fitting, proper.
honestās, -ātis, f. [honestus], honor, integrity, honesty.
in-ci piō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [ca-piō] (take in hand), begin.
maturō, 1 [maturus, ripe], hasten.
moriō, 3, mortuus, die.
pōns, pontis, m., bridge.
re-scindō, 3, -scidi, -scissum, tear away, tear down, break down.
soror, -ōris, f., sister.

---

¹ You know how.
² See 304.
³ It is in mind to us = we intend.
⁴ Could not = was not able.
⁵ See I. 4.
⁶ To see is to believe. Cf. I. 7.
⁷ Usc jubeō.
⁹ Morior has future participle moriturūs.
CHAPTER LXII. 1.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

399. Examine the following: —

DIRECT.

1. Homo est, he is a man.
2. Ignis calet, fire is hot.
3. Amicus adest, (his) friend is present.
4. Mundus a Deo regitur, the world is ruled by God.

INDIRECT.

1. Dicit se hominem esse, he says that he is a man.
2. Sentimus ignem calere, we perceive that fire is hot.
3. Putat amicum adesse, he thinks that his friend is present.
4. Scimus mundum a Deo regi, we know that the world is ruled by God.

Notice the difference between the direct and indirect forms of statement.

In the second group, compare the English with the Latin. Observe (1) that after the leading verb there is nothing in the Latin corresponding to the conjunction that; (2) that, while the English retains the nominative and indicative of the direct form, the Latin has instead the accusative and infinitive.

The second group illustrates the indirect discourse, so called because what some one says, thinks, or knows, is stated in the dependent clause indirectly.

400. Rule of Syntax. — The accusative and infinitive are regularly used after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like.

401. Rule of Syntax. — The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.
402. **Tenses of the Infinitive.**

**Present.**

\[
\begin{align*}
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he says that you are writing.} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he will say that you are writing.} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he said that you were writing.} \\
\end{align*}
\]
\[
\begin{align*}
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he says that the letter is being written.} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he will say that the letter is being written.} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he said that the letter was being written.} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Future.**

\[
\begin{align*}
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he says that you will write.} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he will say that you will write.} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he said that you would write.} \\
\end{align*}
\]
\[
\begin{align*}
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he says that the letter will be written.} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he will say that the letter will be written.} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he said that the letter would be written.} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Perfect.**

\[
\begin{align*}
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he says that you wrote (have written).} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he will say that you wrote (have written).} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he said that you wrote (had written).} \\
\end{align*}
\]
\[
\begin{align*}
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he says that the letter was (has been) written.} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he will say that the letter was (has been) written.} \\
dicit & \quad \{ \text{he said that the letter was (had been) written.} \\
\end{align*}
\]

A study of the above table will show that the present infinitive denotes the same time as that indicated by the tense of the leading verb; that the future infinitive denotes time after that indicated by the leading verb; and that the perfect infinitive denotes time before that indicated by the leading verb.

403. **Rule of Syntax.**—The tenses of the infinitive refer to present, future, or past time, relatively to the time of the leading verb.

---

1 More commonly, *fore ut epistula* with subj. Also see p. 192, n. 1.
2.

EXERCISES.

[It will be best to translate each of the following sentences twice; first, literally, just as they stand, then into good English: thus, History relates two sons to have been to Cornelia = history relates that Cornelia had two sons. The eighth thus: The ambassador said himself a public messenger to be of the Roman people = the ambassador said that he was, etc.]


[Before translating into Latin, cast each sentence mentally into the Latin form; thus the first sentence will be, It is said two sons to have been to Cornelia, or Cornelia two sons to have had; and the seventh, We know you the truth to be about to tell. This practice is of capital importance.]

II. 1. It is said that Cornelia had two sons. 2. Have we not heard that Cornelia had jewels? 3. I think that you will have jewels. 4. We know that Cornelia loved her boys. 5. Do not all mothers think that their sons are their jewels? 6. I think that the moon will be full to-morrow. 7. We know that you will tell the truth. 8. History relates that Hannibal was defeated by Marcellus. 9. It is related that Homer wrote poems. 10. I know that this has been done. 11. He said that the enemy held the mountain.

1 In the compound tenses of the passive voice the perfect particle occasionally loses its idea of time and becomes virtually an adjective. Here trāditum est = it is (a thing) related.
2 Subject of fierī.
3 Nōnne.
3.

EXERCISES.

[Read the first paragraph, page 191.]


[See second paragraph, p. 191. The first sentence expressed in the Latin idiom will be, Ennius says himself at home not to be; the third, He thinks himself at home to be about to be; the fourth, Cato thought his friends the truth not always to speak (compare I. 8).]

II. 1. Ennius says that he is not at home. 2. He said that he had not been at home. 3. He thinks that he shall be at home to-morrow. 4. Cato thought that his friends did not always tell him\(^5\) the truth. 5. It is evident that the world was not made by chance. 6. We have sworn that we will not desert our leader. 7. The soldiers swore that they had not deserted the republic. 8. It was evident that the enemy was being defeated.\(^6\) 9. Do you not know that the enemy are near? 10. It is certain that they are advancing towards the town.

---

\(^1\) Captum, being a supine (433), does not change its form to agree with Rōmam.

\(^2\) Ferunt = dīcunt.

\(^3\) Observe the difference between illum in 6 and sē in 7.

\(^4\) To have thirty years = to be thirty years old.

\(^5\) Him = himself; not accusative.

\(^6\) Notice that the time of the dependent verb is present, with reference to that of the leading verb.
Vocabulary.

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. [acer], harsh, bitter.
arbitror, 1, think, suppose, believe.
cön-stat, 1, stitit, ——, impers. (415), it is evident, clear.
dē-serō, 3, -ui, -tum, desert, abandon.
Ennius, -i, m., Ennius, a Roman poet.
ex-clāmō, 1, cry out, exclaim.
Gallus, -i, m., a Gaul.
historia, -ae, f., history.
in-imicus, -a, -um, adj. [amicus], unfriendly, hostile; noun, an enemy. (172.)
intus, adv. [in], inside, within.
jūrō, 1 [jūs], swear, take an oath.
Mārcellus, -i, m., Marcellus, a Roman general.
mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], wife, lady, matron.
nūntiō, 1 [nūntius], announce, report.
örnamentum, -i, n. [örnō], ornament, jewel. (345, 9.)
populus, -i, m., people.
pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus] (pertaining to the people), public. (345, 19.)
quondam, adv., once, formerly.
sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsum, feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive.
tantum, adv. [tantus], only.
Thalēs, -is, m., Thales, a Greek philosopher.
trā-dō, 3, -dīdī, -ditum [trāns], give over, deliver; relate, recount.
vērum, -i, n. [vērōs], the truth.

4.

407.

FOR TRANSLATION.

Nāsīca et Ennius.

Nāsīca, 1 cum ad poētam Ennium vēnisset, 2 eīque 3 ab ōstiō quaerentī 4 Ennium ancilla dīxisset eum domī 5 nōn esse, sēnsit illam 6 domīni jūssū dīxisse, et illum 7 intus esse. Paucīs post diēbus, cum ad Nāsīcam vēnisset Ennius et eum ā 8 jānuā quaereret, exclāmat Nāsīca sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, "Quid? ego nōn cōgnōscō vōcem," inquit, 9 "tuam?"

1 Subject of sēnsit.
2 Ad . . . vēnisset, had come to, that is, to call on.
3 To him, dat. of is. See 270, 2.
4 Pres. part. of quaerō, in the dat. with eī, to him asking for.
5 See 336.
6 Refers to ancilla, and is the subject acc. of dīxisse.
7 That is, Ennius.
8 Ā jānuā, at the door.
9 Observe the position of inquit.
Hic Násica: “Homo es impudēns. Ego, cum tē quaerere-rem, ancillae tuae crēdidī tē domī nōn esse; tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī?”

CHAPTER LXIII. 1.

PARTICIPLES.

408. Learn the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.
1. For declension of a present active participle, see 165. The ablative singular generally ends in ē, but in ē when the participle is used as an adjective.
2. The other participles, ending in us, a, um, are declined like bonus (71).

409. Examine the following:—

1. Fortissimē dīmicāns { cadit, he falls } cadet, he will fall } fighting most bravely.

2. Hostēs adortus prōflīgāvit, he attacked and routed (having attacked, he routed) the enemy.

3. Eī advenientī aquila pilleum sustulit, an eagle took off his cap as he was approaching (to him approaching).

4. Leōnidās superātus cēdere nōluit, Leonidas, (though) overpowered, would not yield.

5. Rōmā expulsus Athēnās ībit, (if) expelled from Rome, he will go to Athens.

6. Epistulam sibi commissam dētulit, he delivered the letter (which had been) intrusted to him.

7. Ēā rē commōtus in Ītaliām rediit, he returned into Italy (because he was) alarmed at this event.

8. Nōs moriturī salūtāmus, we, (who are) about to die, salute you.

9. Ob virginēs raptās, on account of the seizure of the maidens (maidens seized).

1 An adverb, hereupon. 2 Dat. after crēdidī. See 343. 3 Subject acc. of esse. See 401. 4 Emphasizes mihi. (270. 4.)
PARTICIPLES.

Study the above examples with reference first to the tenses of the participles, and observe that the time of the participles is present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the leading verb.

Notice how the participle is translated in each example; only in the first is it most translated literally. What the Latin expresses by a participle we very often express by a clause beginning as, though, if, because, etc., by a relative clause, or by a verb coördinate with one following.

2.

EXERCISES.

[It will be best to translate every sentence literally, then into good English.]


[Cast each of the following sentences into the Latin idiom before attempting to translate. Thus, Romulus killed Remus laughing at (acc. in agreement with Remus); Horatius stabbed his sister forgetful (oblītam); to the ambassadors demanding, etc.]

II. 1. Romulus killed Remus because he laughed at his wall. 2. Horatius stabbed his sister with his sword because

---

1 Feminine of the perf. part. oblītus, from obliviscor. Translate, Thou who hast forgotten (lit., having forgotten).
2 To the ambassador demanding = to the ambassador who demanded, or when the ambassador demanded.
3 Respōnsum est, it was replied = answer was made.
4 Excussum trānsfixit, struck off and stabbed. See 409.2.
5 About to avenge, i.e., in order to avenge.
6 Compare 409.6.
she was forgetful of her country. 3. The Latins answered the ambassadors\(^1\) haughtily, when they demanded restitution. 4. The Gauls entered the open houses. 5. To the Romans, as they came out of the pass, the light was sadder than death\(^2\) itself. 6. The old men went forth to meet\(^3\) Manlius\(^1\) as he was returning to Rome. 7.\(^4\) They bound the prisoner and brought him back to the city. 8. The letter which had been written by the boy was delivered. 9. The Romans never despaired, though they were often defeated.\(^5\) 10. Cæsar received the senate sitting,\(^6\) when they came\(^7\) to him.

### VOCABULARY.

**com-moveō**, 2, -mōvi, -mōtum,  
shake, disturb, excite, alarm.
**dē-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum,  
(bring down), deliver.
**dē-spērō**, 1, be hopeless, despair.
**ē-vertō**, 3, -tī, -sum, overturn,  
overthrow, destroy.
**ex-erītō**, 3, -cussi, -cussum  
[quātiō], shake out, strike off,  
drive away, cast out.
**Faliscī, -ōrum**, m., the Faliscans,  
a people of Etruria.
**hinc**, adv. [hic], from this place,  
here.
**ir-rideō**, 2, -risi, -risum [in],  
laugh at, ridicule, jest, mock.
**Latinus**, -a, -um [Latium],  
Latin; noun, a Latin.
**necessitās**, -ātis, r. [necessē],  
necessity, constraint.
**ob-viam**, adv., in the way; with  
verb of motion, meet; w. dat.
**pateō**, 2, -uī, ——, lie open, be  
open; part. patēns, open.
**porta,-ae, r., gate, door. Cf. ānua.**
**re-dūcō**, 3, -xi, -ductum, lead  
back, bring back.
**senior**, -ōris, m. & r. (comp. of  
**senex**, old), elder, old person.
**statim**, adv. (stō), (standing there),  
on the spot, immediately, at once.
**superbē**, adv. [superbus],  
proudly, haughtily.
**trāns-fīgō**, 3, -fixi, -fixum,  
pierce through, pierce, stab.
**vindicō**, 1, claim, avenge, punish.

---

\(^1\) Dative.
\(^2\) See 211, 212.
\(^3\) To meet, obviam.
\(^4\) Compare I. 7.

\(^5\) Not the last word: the Romans often defeated, etc.
\(^6\) In agreement with Cæsar.
\(^7\) Had come. See 373.
CHAPTER LXIV.

PARTICIPLES: ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

412. Examine the following:

3ōle oriente, fugiunt

tenebrae, { the sun rising, 
when the sun rises, } the shadows flee away.
(at the rising of the sun)

Datō signō, virginēs

raptae sunt, { the signal having been given, 
when the signal was given, } the maidens were seized.
(at the given signal)

Eō regnante, bellum

exortum est, { he reigning, 
in his reign, } a war arose.
(while he was reigning)

Cōnsul, bellō cōnfectō, Rōmam rediit, { the war having been finished, 
when the war was finished, } the consul returned to Rome.
(having finished the war)

Tē duce, hostēs vincēmus, { you (being) leader, 
if you are our leader, } we shall conquer the enemy.
(with you for a leader)

Messālla et Pīsōne

cōnsulibus,

{ M. and P. (being) consuls. 
when M. and P. were consuls. } in the consulship of M. and P.

Serēnō caelō,

{ the sky (being) clear. 
when the sky is clear. } in a clear sky.

1. The foregoing examples illustrate the very common construction called the Ablative Absolute.

2. In the first four examples there is a noun (or pronoun) in the ablative, and a participle agreeing with it. In the last three there is no participle expressed, but instead, another noun or an adjective.

3. Carefully compare the Latin with the English translation, and observe that each ablative absolute may be rendered by a clause beginning with when, while, or if (in other instances because, although, etc.), the Latin noun in the ablative becoming the subject of the clause in English, and that this noun refers to a different person or thing from the subject of the leading verb.
4. We may also sometimes translate the participle in the ablative absolute by a verb coordinate with a following verb. Thus the fourth might be translated, *The consul finished the war and returned.*

5. If I wish to express in the Latin, *While he was reigning, he carried on war,* he being the subject of both the principal and subordinate clauses, I say, *Is rēgnāns bellum gessit;* but if I wish to express, *While he was reigning, war arose,* he being subject of the subordinate clause, and *war of the principal,* I use the ablative absolute, thus, *Eō rēgnante, bellum exortum est.*

6. In the fourth example notice the change of idiom. We might say, *The consul, having finished the war, returned to Rome;* but the Latin has no perfect active participle corresponding to *having finished;* therefore, in Latin the perfect passive participle must be used in the ablative with the noun *bellum.* The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a *cum* clause. See 372.

7. From the nature of deponent verbs (passive form with active meaning), it will be seen that the English participle with *having* may be directly expressed in Latin, if there is a deponent verb of the right meaning; thus, *Caesar having encouraged his men, Caesar mēlitēs hortātus.*

8. Most instances of the so-called ablative absolute may be resolved as the ablative of time, means, cause, etc.

413. **EXERCISES.**

[Translate each ablative absolute in as many ways as possible.]


---

1 *When this had been done.* What is it literally?
PARTICIPLES: ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

[Before trying to translate the following sentences, consider well in each case what the probable Latin form of expression, or idiom, would be for the subordinate clause, adverbial phrase, etc.; thus, When he had stabbed the girl = the girl (having been) stabbed; When Numa was king = Numa (being) king; By hurling their javelins = by the javelins hurled.]

II. 1. When he had stabbed the girl, he put by his sword.
   2. On the expulsion of King Tarquin, Brutus and Collatinus were made consuls. 3. When Numa was king, the temple of Janus was built. 4. Caesar, after he had overcome the Gauls, waged war with Pompey. 5. On the death of Cato, there was no longer a republic. 6. Having learned these facts (things), he hastened against the enemy. 7. The soldiers, by hurling their javelins, broke the enemy’s line. 8. Having held a levy, the consul sets out immediately for (ad) the army. 9. O my country, thou hast overcome my anger by employing a mother’s entreaties. 10. If we do this, we shall all be safe.

414.

VOCABULARY.

ad-movere, 2. -movi, -mötum, (move up, towards), apply, employ.
cognoscō, 3. -gnovī, -gnitum [com, (g)nōscō], learn, recognize, know.
Collatīnus, -i, m., Collatinus, surname of L. Tarquinius.
con-iciō, 3. -jēcī, -jectum [ja- 
ciō] (throw together), throw, hurl.
contendō, 3. -di, -tum (draw tight), exert one’s self, strive, hasten; contend.
convertō, 3. -ti, -sum, turn round, turn, change; sē convertere, turn one’s self, turn.
delēctus, -ūs, m. [dēligō, choose out], selection, levy.

dē-pōnō, 3. -posui, -positum, put down, put by, lay down.
ex-pellō, 3. -puli, -pulsum, drive out or away, expel.
Jānus, -i, m., Janus, the two-faced god.
pef-fringō, 3. -frēgi, -fractum [frangō, break], break through, break.
Rhodus, -ī, r., Rhodes, an island in the Aegean.
se-cēdō, 3. -cessi, -cessum, go apart, withdraw, retire.
statuō, 3. -ui, -ūtum, put, place; think, believe, determine.
stringō, 3. -nxi, strictum (draw tight), graze; draw, unsheathe.

1 No longer = nūlla jam. 2 If we do this = this done.
CHAPTER LXV. 1.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

415. Examine the following:—

1. Pluit, it rains.
2. Tonat, it thunders.
3. Mē pudet stultitiae meae, I am ashamed (it shames me) of my folly.
4. Eum paenitet sceleris, he repents (it repents him) of his crime.
5. Pūgnābātur, fighting was going on (it was being fought).
6. Caesarī¹ pārendum² est, Caesar must be obeyed (it must be obeyed to Caesar).
7. Tibi licet exīre, you may go out (it is permitted to you to go out).
8. Hōc nōs facere oportet, we ought to do this (it behooves us to do this).
9. Caesarī placuit ut lēgātōs mitteret, Caesar determined (it pleased Caesar) to send ambassadors.

(1) Observe in each of the foregoing examples that the leading verb has no personal subject either expressed or implied. In 7, the subject of licet is the infinitive exīre; in 8, the phrase hōc nōs facere is the subject of oportet; in 9, the clause ut lēgātōs mitteret is the subject of placuit. In each of the first six the subject is contained in the verb itself.

(2) Some verbs, like pluit, tonat, pudet, paenitet, licet, the use of which is mostly confined to the third person singular, are called Impersonal Verbs; many others, as in the examples pūgnābātur, oportet, placuit, are sometimes used impersonally.

(3) Examples 7 and 8 show one way of rendering may and must into Latin.

(4) In 3 and 4 notice the use of the accusative and genitive after the verbs.

416. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The impersonal verbs miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taudet take the accusa-
tive of the person and the genitive of the object or cause of the feeling.

Some examples of verbs used impersonally have already been given. See 362. I. 9; 370. I. 5; 410. I. 3.

417. Examine the following: —

**Active.**

1. *Prātrī persuādet,* he persuades his brother.
2. *Lēgibus pārēbant,* they obeyed the laws.
3. *Crēdit mihi,* he believes me.
4. *Amīcis nocent,* they injure their friends.

**Passive.**

1. *Prātrī persuādētur,* his brother is persuaded.
2. *Lēgibus pārēbātur,* the laws were obeyed.
3. *Mihi crēditūr,* I am believed.
4. *Amīcis nocētur,* their friends are injured.

Observe that the verbs are intransitive. Compare the active and passive in the examples one by one. Observe that in each case the passive is expressed by putting the verb in the third person singular, leaving the indirect object of the active unchanged.

418. Rule of Syntax. — Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive, the person or thing affected (the subject in English) being expressed by the dative.

419. Exercises.

I. 1. Omnēs decet rēctē agere. 2. Diū et ācriter pūgnātum est. 3. Sequitur ut falsum sit. 4. Eōrum nōs miseret.¹
5. Taedēt mē vitae. 6. Statuendum² vōbis ante noctem est.

¹ Compare 415. 3 and 4.
² The duty of deciding is to you = you must decide. Compare 425. 7.
³ It behooved us to do = we ought
to have done.
⁴ See 343.
[Observe that the following sentences are modelled closely on the foregoing, and on the illustrative examples. Cast each one into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words; thus the fifth sentence will be changed to *It disgusts me of the folly, etc.*]

**II.** 1. It becomes us all to live well. 2. The battle will be fought bravely. 3. It followed that the enemy were defeated. 4. He was ashamed of his cowardice. 5. I am disgusted with the folly of the men. 6. What must we do? 7. What ought we to have done? 8. May I take the book? 9. It was reported to Cæsar that the enemy were approaching. 10. It resulted from these circumstances that all were silent. 11. The winds are opposed with difficulty. 12. Can the soldier be spared? 13. Are not the laws of the republic obeyed?

### VOCABULARY.

**decent, 2, decuit, impers., it is**

seemly, becoming, fitting.

**ē-gradior, 3, *gressus [gradior],**

go out, go forth, march out. Cf.

**execō.**

**fortiter, adv. [fortis], bravely, courageously.**

**licet, 2, -uit, or -ītum est, impers.,**

it is permitted, it is lawful, (one) may.

**miseret, 2, -ītum est, impers.**

[miser], it makes miserable, it excites pity, (one) pities.

**ob-sistō, 3, *stiti, -stitum, oppose, withstand, resist, w. dat.**

**opertet, 2, -uit, impers., it is**

necessary, it behooves, (one) must or ought.

**parcō, 3, *peperci (parsī), parsūm, spare, w. dat.**

**pugnet, 2, -uit, or -ītum est, impers.,**

it disgusts, (one) is disgusted.

**pudet, 2, -uit, or -ītum est, impers.,**

it shames, (one) is ashamed.

**pūgnō, 1 [pūgna], fight.**

**stultitia, -ae, n. [stultus, foolish], folly. (345. 11.)**

**taedet, 2, -uit, or taesum est, impers.,**

it disgusts, wearies, (one) is disgusted.

**vix, adv., hardly, with difficulty.**

---

1 A result clause, ut, etc.
2 Compare 415. 3.
3 Compare I. 8.
4 Compare 415. 7.
5 Fīēbat.
6 Rēs.
2.

FOR TRANSLATION.

THE DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW.

Lugete, o Veneres Cupidinesque,
Et quantum\textsuperscript{1} hominum\textsuperscript{2} venustiorum.
Passer mortuus est meae puellae,
Passer, deliciae meae puellae,
Quem plus illa oculis\textsuperscript{3} suis amabat:
Nam mellitus erat suamque\textsuperscript{4} norat\textsuperscript{5}
Ipsa\textsuperscript{6} tam bene quam puella matrem
Nec se se a gremio illius\textsuperscript{7} movebat,
Sed circumsiliens modo huc modo illuc
Ad solam dominam usque pipiabat.
Qui\textsuperscript{8} nunc it per iter tenebris ocum
Illuc unde negant redire quemquam.\textsuperscript{9}
At vobis male sit,\textsuperscript{10} malae tenebrae
Orci, quae omnia bella\textsuperscript{11} devoratis:
Tam bellum mihi\textsuperscript{12} passerem abstulistis.
O factum male!\textsuperscript{13} Io miselle passer!
Tua nunc opera\textsuperscript{14} meae puellae\textsuperscript{15}
Flendo turgiduli rubent\textsuperscript{16} ocelli.—Catullus.

\textsuperscript{1} For quantum est. Translate, all ye lovely ones, whoever ye are. What is it literally?
\textsuperscript{2} Depends on quantum. See 340.
\textsuperscript{3} Ablative after the comparative plus. See 212.
\textsuperscript{4} Supply dominam.
\textsuperscript{5} For növerat, but with the meaning of the imperfect.
\textsuperscript{6} With puella.
\textsuperscript{7} That is, puellae.
\textsuperscript{8} Refers to passer.
\textsuperscript{9} Subject acc. of redire. See 401 and 279. 6.
\textsuperscript{10} Ill betide you!
\textsuperscript{11} From bellus.
\textsuperscript{12} Translate my.
\textsuperscript{13} Factum male, woful deed.
What is it literally?
\textsuperscript{14} On your account.
\textsuperscript{15} Genitive after ocelli.
\textsuperscript{16} Turgiduli rubent, are all swollen and red.
CHAPTER LXVI. 1.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.—GERUNDIVE.

[Review the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.]

422. The future active participle with the verb sum forms the First, or Active Periphrastic Conjugation: amātūrus sum, eram, etc., I am, was, etc., about to (going to, intending to) love.

423. The gerundive with the verb sum forms the Second, or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation: amandus sum, eram, etc., I am, was, etc., to be loved; I deserve, ought, etc., to be loved.

424. PARADIGMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PARADIGMS</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INDICATIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amātūrus sum</td>
<td>amandus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPER.</td>
<td>amātūrus eram</td>
<td>amandus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amātūrus erō</td>
<td>amandus erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERF.</td>
<td>amātūrus fui</td>
<td>amandus fui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUP.</td>
<td>amātūrus fueram</td>
<td>amandus fueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.P.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuerō</td>
<td>amandus fuerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

425. Examine the following:—

1. Nōn dubitō quīn monitūrus sit, I do not doubt that he will advise.
2. Nōn dubitō quīn futūrum sit ut id fiat, I do not doubt that (it will happen that it be done) it will be done.
3. Sciēbam quid actūrus essēs, I knew what you were going to do.
4. Pontem faciendum cūrat, he (takes are a bridge to be built) has a bridge built.
5. Dēlenda est Carthāgē, Carthage must be destroyed.
6. Caesārī omnia erant agenda, everything had to be done by Casar.
7. Mihi scribendum est, (the duty of writing is to me) I must write.
8. Omnibus moriendum est, (the necessity of dying is to all) all must die.
9. Vōbīs jūdiciō ūtendum est, (the duty of using judgment is to you) you ought to use judgment.

(1) The first three examples show how a future tense may be supplied for the subjunctive mood.

(2) Observe in the fourth example the use of the gerundive agreeing with a noun which is the object of cūrō, the whole expression denoting to have a thing done.

(3) The last five examples show some uses of the passive periphrastic conjugation. Notice that the idea of necessity, or duty, is prominent in these forms.

(4) In 7, 8, and 9 the verbs are used impersonally, that is, without any personal subject, the gerundive being in the nominative singular neuter. This impersonal use belongs to transitive verbs without an object expressed, and to intransitive verbs. For the case of jūdiciō, see 304.

(5) In the last four examples, Caesari, mihi, omnibus, and vōbīs, denote in each case the person to whom there is a duty or necessity of doing something. This dative is most conveniently rendered with by, and is called the Dative of Agent.

426. Rule of Syntax. — The dative is used with the gerundive to denote the person by whom the act must be done.¹

2.

427. Exercises.


¹ How is the agent with a verb in the passive otherwise and commonly expressed?

II. 1. There is no doubt that you are going to be a hero. 2. I doubt not that you will see the games. 3. Do not doubt that he will be present. 4. Do you know what he is going to do? 5. We ought to cultivate virtue. 6. I must give the signal. 7. We ought to read the poets. 8. The commander must be obeyed. 9. The boy is not to be believed. 10. The town had to be fortified.

3.

428.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. I will ask of the general whether he is going to advance. 2. Who doubts that the Romans will surrender themselves to the Faliscans? 3. If words had not failed, I was going to write a longer letter. 4. I think the enemy will be defeated. 5. When Cæsar was on the point of

---

1 Nōli dubitāre. How else may this be expressed?
2 Express in two ways—by using oportet, and then by the gerundive.
3 Lit. it must be obeyed to the commander. Cf. 415. 6.
4 Fore = futūrum esse, to be about to be, may be omitted in translation.
5 Compare 425. 4, and (2).
6 See 425. 9.
7 Compare I. 3.
starting for Rome, he received a letter from Pompey.
6. My opinion is that the town ought to be besieged.
7. These things must not be despised by us. 8. A wise
man will have his boys trained in Latin literature.
9. The citizens must obey the laws. 10. The soldiers must use
their own judgment.

429.

VOCABULARY.

Aemilius, -ī, m., AEmilius, a Roman consul.
cēnseō, 2, -ni, -num, estimate; think, deem, be of opinion.
Croesus, -ī, m., Cræsus, king of Lydia.
dē-dō, 3, -dīdī, -ditum, (put away from one’s self) surrender, deliver up.
dē-fīcīō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [facīō], (make away from) revolt; fail, be wanting.
dē-sistō, 3, -stītī, -stītum, (stand off or apart) leave off; cease, desist.
doctus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of doceō], learned.
gravis, -e, adj., heavy, serious.
graver, adv., heavily, seriously.
ita, adv., thus, so.
jamjam, adv., already; jamjam ventūrus, on the point of coming.
jūdicium, -ī, n. [jūdicō], judgment, opinion.
op-pūgnō, 1 [ob], attack, assault, besiege.
ōrāculum, -ī, n. [ōrō], oracle.
parātus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of parō], ready, prepared.
pertinācia, -ae, f. [pertināx, persistent], perseverance, obstinacy.
(signum, -ī, n., mark, sign, signal.
ůtor, 3, ēsus, use, employ, w. abl.
utrum, adv., whether. Cf. num, 382.

jūdicō, cēnseō, existimō, arbitrō, putō, and opinor, all mean think; but the first four imply more deliberation and reflection; primarily think as a judge, a magistrate, an appraiser, an arbiter; hence, in general, of official, authoritative opinion. Putō and opinor imply rather private, personal judgment or opinion.

1 On the point of starting = already about to start.
2 This I think. Cf. I. 6.
3 See 425. (5).
4 Cf. I. 7, and 425. (2).
5 Compare 232. I. 4.
6 A civibus, to distinguish the agent from the indirect object.
CHAPTER LXVII.

GERUND. — GERUNDIVE. — SUPINE.

430. Learn the gerunds and supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

GERUND.

431. Examine the following: —

G. Caesar loquendi finem facit, Caesar makes an end of speaking.
   Cupidus est tē audiendī, he is desirous of hearing you.
D. Aqua utilis est bibendō, water is useful for drinking.
Ac. Inter pugna dūm trīgintā nāvēs captae sunt, during the fight (amid the fighting) thirty ships were taken.
Ab. Mēns discendō alitur, the mind is strengthened by learning.
   1. The above examples illustrate the use of the gerund in its several cases. It will be seen that the gerund is used like the English verbal noun in ing. The nominative is supplied in Latin by the infinitive; e.g., vidēre est crēdere, seeing is believing.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

432. Examine the following: —

G. Cōnsilia { urbem dēlendī, } plans for (of) destroying the city.
   { urbis dēlendae, }
D. Operam dat { agrōs colendō (rare), } he devotes himself to tilling the fields.
   { agrīs colendīs, }  
Ac. Vēnērunt ad { pācem petendum (rare), } they came to sue for peace.
   { pācem petendam, }  
Ab. Occupātus sum in { litterās scribendō (rare), } I was engaged in writing letters.
   { litterīs scribendīs, }  
   1. What is to be particularly studied in the above examples is the difference between the gerund and the gerundive construction, as shown within the braces. Observe (1) that the gerund is put in the required case, and has its object in the accusative; (2) that the noun is put in the required case, and the gerundive agrees with it.
2. Except in the genitive, where the two constructions are about equally common, the gerundive construction is almost always preferred.

3. Notice that the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with ad denotes a purpose. This construction is much used. In what other ways may a purpose be expressed?

**Supine.**

433. Examine the following:—

1. Lēgātī Rōmam veniunt pācem petītum, ambassadors come to Rome to sue for peace.
2. Id perfacile est factū, that is very easy to do, or to be done.

Observe in the first example that the supine petītum has the same meaning as ut petant, quī petant, or ad petendam; that is, it expresses purpose. This use is common after verbs of motion.

434. Rule of Syntax.—The supine in um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.

In the second example the supine in ā answers the question in what respect? Perfacile factū, easy in respect to the doing. This use is common after adjectives.

The supine in ā is really an ablative of specification. See 260.

435. **Exercises.**


---

1 From a desire; abl. of cause.  
2 She. See 270. 2.  
3 The ablative causā, for the sake of, follows its genitive.
II. 1. You will have time to lead (of leading) out the army from that place. 2. He undertook the war for the sake\(^1\) of destroying the republic. 3. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 4. While drinking\(^2\) we conversed about many things. 5. Many leaders had assembled to see\(^3\) Scipio. 6. Night put\(^4\) an end to the fighting. 7. This seems (to be) a suitable place for building a house. 8. The enemy had entertained\(^5\) the hope of getting possession of the camp.\(^6\) 9. A multitude of men came together to witness\(^3\) the games. 10. It is difficult to say what he will do.\(^7\)

436.

**VOCABULARY.**

ad-imō, 3, -ēmi, -ēemptum [emō], take away, remove.
alō, 3, -uī, -tum, nourish, strengthen, support.
ant-cēdō, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum, go before.
auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō], help, aid, support; pl. auxiliaries.
coloquor, 3, -locitus [com], speak together, converse.
com-mūniō, 4, (fortify strongly) secure, intrench.
con-veniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum [com], come together, assemble.
conector, 1, linger, hesitate.
edō, edere or esse, ēdī, ēsum or ēssum, eat.
explōrō, 1, search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.
Fabius, -ī, m., Fabius, a Roman general.
hauriō, 4, hausī, haustum, draw (water), drain, drink up.
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, convenient, suitable; opportune.
restitūō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [statuō], (replace) give back, return, restore.
sus-cipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [sub, capiō], undertake.

---

\(^1\) Causā. See p. 209, note 3.
\(^2\) Inter bibendum.
\(^3\) Express in three ways.
\(^4\) Put an end to = make an end of.
\(^5\) Entertain the hope = come into the hope.

\(^6\) What case with potior?

\(^7\) Why must the subjunctive be used? What tense of the subjunctive to express future time? What form expresses the immediate future?
READING LESSONS.

LETTERS: CICERO TO HIS WIFE TERENTIA.

437. B.C. 49.

Si valēs, bene est, valeō.1 Dā operam2 ut convalesceās. Quod opus3 erit, ut4 rōs tempusque postulat, prōvideās5 atque administrēs; et ad mē dē omnibus rēbus quam6 saepissimē litterās mittās. Valē.

438. B.C. 49.


---

1 The Romans often began their letters with these five words, or rather with the abbreviations S. V. B. E. V.
2 Give labor = try.
3 An indeclinable noun, need; opus est, is necessary.
4 What indicates that ut does not mean in order that?
5 The hortatory subjunctive.
See 390.
6 Quam strengthens the superlative; quam saepissimē, as often as possible.
7 For ego.
8 I could wish; volō, I wish.
9 Equivalent to ut cūrēs.
10 Notice the emphatic position of the adverb, after the verb.
11 Et . . . et, both . . . and.
12 Subj. of incidisse. See 401.
13 In that.
14 Fēcisti . . . certōrem, made more certain = informed.
15 Anything; quid is regularly used instead of aliquaōd after si, nisi, nē, and num.
16 See note 3, above.
17 Of new; partitive genitive.
18 A future equivalent to the imperative. Faciēs ut sciam, inform me. What is it literally?
439.  B.C. 46.

Sī valēs, bene est. ¹ Cōnstituerāmus, ut ² ad tē anteā scripseram, obviam Cicerōnem ³ Caesārī mittere; sed mūtā-vimus consilium, quia dē illius ⁴ adventū nihil audiēbāmus. Dē cēterīs rēbus, etsi nihil erat novī, ⁵ tamen quid velīmus ⁶ et quid hoc tempore putēmus ⁶ opus ⁷ esse ex Siccā ⁸ poteris cōgnōscere. Tulliam adhūc mēcum teneō. Valētūdinem tuam cūrā ⁹ diligenter. Valē.

440.  B.C. 46.


¹ Compare this form of begin-
ning a letter with those of the two preceding.

² Compare the use of ut in
437, line 2.

³ That is, his son Cicero.

⁴ That is, Cāsār's.

⁵ Genitive neuter of novus de-
pending on nihil. Compare the
same word in 438, and the note.

⁶ Translate the words quid vel-
limus, etc., just as they stand.

⁷ Compare opus cērit in 437
and 438, and the note.

⁸ A friend of Cicero.

⁹ Compare with this the begin-
ning and the ending of 438.

¹⁰ Observe how nearly this letter
can be translated in the order of
the Latin words.

¹¹ Anything at all. To express
anything at all, after a negative
word, as here after neque, the
Romans used quidquam, not
aliquid. See 279, 6.

¹² Genitive neuter of certus,
depending on quidquam. Com-
pare novī in 438 after quid, and
in 439 after nihil.

¹³ Compare fecisti certīorem
in 438, and the note.

¹⁴ See p. 150, note. Fac ut
cūrēs, be sure to take care. What
is the literal meaning? Compare
with this the endings of the two
preceding letters.
FABLES.

441. Dē Vitīs Hominum.

Jūpiter nōbīs1 duās pērās imposuit: alteram,2 quae nos-
trīs vitīs replēta est, post tergum nōbīs dedit; alteram2
autem, quā3 aliōrum vitia continentur, ante pectus nostrum4
suspendit. Quārē nōn vidēmus quae5 ipsī peccāmus; sī
autem alīi peccant, statim eōs vituperāmus.

442. Mulier et Gallīna.

Mulier quacdam habēbat gallīnam, quae ēī6 cotīdiēō
ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coēpit illam7 aurī massam
intus cēlāre, et gallīnam occidit. Sed nihil in ēā reperrerit,
nisi quod8 in aliīs gallīnis reperrerī solet.9 Itaque dum
mājōribus dīvitīs inhāt,10 etiam mīnūrēs11 perdidit.

443. Vulpēs et Úva.

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōnsicāta12 ad illam subsiliīt omnīm
vīriūm suārum contentiōne,13 sī cam forte attingere posset.

---

1 With *imposuit*; has placed on us.

2 Alter ... alter, the one ... the other.

3 Quā = in quā pērā.

4 Compare ante pectus nostrum with post tergum nōbīs.

5 What we sin = what sins we commit. On *ipsī*, see 270. 4.

6 For her.

7 Illam = illam gallīnam, subject of cēlāre.

8 Nisi quod = praeter id quod.

9 Is wont = is usually.

10 *Gapes for = is greedy for*. Notice here a peculiarity of the Latin: the present is used after *dum*, though the perfect perdidit follows. The English idiom requires us to translate such a present by the imperfect, was greedy for.

11 Supply the Latin noun in the proper form.

12 Perfect participle of cōnsicīor, agreeing with *vulpēs*. Translate by the present participle.

13 With the exertion.
Tandem défatigāta ināně labōre discēdēns, "At nunc etiam," inquit, "acēbrae sunt, nec eās in viā repertās tollerem." 3

444. Rūsticus et Canis Fidēlis.

Rūsticus in agrōs exīt ad opus suum. Filiolum, quī in cūnis jacēbat, reliquit canī fidēli atque validō custōdiendum. 5 Adrēpsit anguis immānis, quī puerulum extincturus erat. Sed custōs fidēlis corripit eum dentibus acūtīs, et, dum eum necāre studet, 6 cūnās simul ēvertit super extinctum anguem. Paulō post ex arvō ređīt agricola; cum cūnās ēversās cruentumque canis rīctum vidēret, 7 trā accenditur. 8 Temerē igitur custōdem filiolī interfēcit ligōne, quem manibus tenēbat. Sed ubi cūnās restituīt, 9 super anguem occīsum reppperit puerum vivum et incolōmen. Paciēntientia facinoris 10 sēra 11 fuit.


Puer in prātō ovēs pāscēbat, 12 atque per jocum clāmitābat, ut sibi auxiliūm ferrētur, quasi lupus gregem esset adorūs. Agricolae undique succurrēbant, neque 13 lupum invenēbant. Ita ter quaterque sē clūsōs ā puerō vidērunt. Deinde 14 cūm ipse 15 lupus aggredērēt, et puer rē vérā 16 implōrāret au-

---

1 The plural, as if ūvae had been used.
2 Eās repertās, them found = if I had found them.
3 Would I pick them up.
4 The so called dative of the agent with custōdiendum. Translate, left for his . . . dog to guard.
5 Literally, to be guarded.
7 For the subjunctive, see 373.
8 Present for perfect, called historical present.
9 Translate as if it were restituerat; after ubi, ut, and postquam, meaning when, the perfect indicative is commonly used, but it is best rendered by the pluperfect.
10 Translate, for the deed.
11 Too late.
12 The imperfect, denoting customary action; render, used to tend.
13 But . . . not.
14 See p. 106, note 1.
15 Really. See 270. 6.
16 Rē vérā, in earnest.
xilium, nēmod gregē subvēni̇t, et ovēs lupī praedā sunt factae. Mendāci hominī nōn crēdīmus, etiam cum vēra dīcit.

446. Sensē et Mors.


447. Vulpēs et Leō.


1 Cf. succurrō. See 343. How does the meaning help come from the primitive meaning?
2 Predicate nominative.
3 Why dative? See 343.
4 From caedō, not cadō.
5 From tollō, not sufferō.
6 For the subjunctive, see 373.
7 Notice the order: the genitives coming first are made emphatic.
8 Abl. of separation. See 130.
9 See p. 214, note 8.
10 Umerīs . . . impōnās, cf. nōbis . . . imposuit in 441.
11 Quaesō impōnās = quaesō ut impōnās.
12 Is this clause a purpose or result clause? See illustrative examples, 352 and 368.
13 Of fright.
14 The third time.
15 To such a degree was not frightened = was so far from being frightened.
CAESAR’S TWO INVASIONS OF BRITAIN.

448. [In the latter part of the summer of B.C. 55, Caesar brought his ships together into the country of the Morini, who occupied the seacoast from the modern Boulogne northward, and set sail for Britain.]

Caesar ipse cum omnibus cópiis in Morinós proficiscitur, quod¹ inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trájectus. Húc návēs² undique ex fínitimis regiónibus et quam³ superióre aestāte⁴ effécerat clássem jübet conveníre.

Nactus⁵ idóneam ad návigandum tempestātem, tertiā férē⁶ vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in últeriórem portum prōgredī et návēs cónsèndere et sē sequi jüssit. Ipse hōrā⁷ circiter dīci quartā cum prīmīs návibus Britanniam attigít, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expósitās hostium cópiās armātās cónspexit. Hunc⁸ ad ēgregiendum nēquāquam idóneum locum arbitrátus, dum reliquae návēs eō convenírent, ad hōram nōnām in ancorīs⁹ exspectāvit. Tum ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum,¹⁰ datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter

¹ Because.
² Subject acc., together with clássem, of conveníre.
³ Goes with clássem. Translate aloud the whole sentence, first following strictly the order of the Latin words, and rendering quam, what. Probably the meaning will then be clear, and your translation can be recast into good English.

This method of discovering the meaning of a Latin sentence, as distinguished from that of trying to determine first the subject and predicate, and then the modifiers of each, will often be found very helpful.

⁴ Ablative of time when. See 136.
⁵ From nanciscor. Cf. nancēti, p. 220, line 1.
⁶ See p. 154, note 1. In translating to jüssit, observe the suggestion in note 3.
⁷ Translate as if the order were circiter quartā hōrā dīēi, but observe that circiter is here an adverb, and hōrā has the construction of aestāte, line 4, and vigiliā, line 6.
⁸ Goes with locum.
⁹ In ancorīs, at anchor.
¹⁰ Goes with ventum and aestum.
milia passuum septem ab eō locō progressus, apertō āe plānō litore nāvēs cōnstituit. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmā-nōrum cōgnītō, nostrōs nāvibus ēgrediō prohibēbant.

[It seemed for a time as if Cæsar would not be able to effect a landing at all. The Britons, barbari, as Cæsar calls them, some standing on the edge of the shore, or advancing into the water, others driving in their horses with their two-wheeled chariots a little way, to get nearer to the ships, fought the Romans manfully. But they had to deal with an enemy as brave and determined as themselves, and the Romans were fighting under the eye of Cæsar. At last one daring soldier showed them how to conquer.]


[As a result of this fight, and of some subsequent defeats, the Britons submitted to Cæsar, who soon after returned to Gaul.

1 We should expect in litore. 2 From disembarking. Cf. prōgressus, ēgrediendum, prōgredi, above. It is by vigilant observation in reading, and comparison of different forms from the same root, rather than from incessant resort to vocabularies and dictionaries, that the task of getting a working knowledge of Latin words is to be accomplished. “Recollect that brains and common sense, not thumbs, should get most exercise.”

3 Subject of inquit. Observe the suggestion of p. 216, note 3.
4 Do not translate thing.
5 Always placed after one or more of the words quoted.
6 Meum . . . officium, my to the public and to the general duty. Mark the order, and see how it gives emphasis to meum.
7 When, not with. See 373.
8 Cohortāti inter sē, encouraging each other.
9 Cf. dēsilite, above.
10 From uterque.
The following summer, B.C. 54, Caesar prepared for a second
invasion of Britain. With about 20,000 foot-soldiers and 2,000
horsemen, he set sail from Portus Itius, which is probably the
modern Wissant, and landed in the neighborhood of Deal. There
are many reasons for supposing that these were the places of the
embarkation and landing of the preceding year.]

Caesar ad portum Itium, quō ex portū commodissimum
in Britanniam trājectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter mīlia
passuum trīgintā sī continentī, cum legiōnibus pervēnit. Ibi
cōgnōscit sexāgiāntā nāvēs, quae in Meldis factae erant,
tempestāte rējectās cursum tenère nōn potuisse atque cōdem
unde erant profectae revertīssē; reliquās parātās ad nāvi-
gandum atque omnibus rēbus inūstrātās invēnit. Eōdem
equitātus tōius Galliae convēnit numerō mīlia quattuor,
principēisque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus pereaucōs,
quōrum in sæ fidem perspexit, reliquere in Galliā, reli-
quōs obsidium locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat; quod, cum
ipse abesset, mōtum Galliā verēbātur.

Itaque diēs circiter vigintī quiūnque in cō locō commorātus,
quod cōrus ventus nāvigationēnem impediēbat, quī māgnām
partem omnis temporis in ĕs locīs flārē cōnsūēvit, tandem
idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnsen-
dere in nāvēs jubet.

1 Commodissimum...trā-
jectum. Compare the order in
line 2, p. 216, and 7, p. 217. In
trying this first sentence, change
mentally the order quō ex to ex
quō; then observe the suggestion
of note 3, p. 216.

2 Cf. circiter mīlia passuum,
p. 216, line 13.

3 Subject acc. of potuisse and
revertīssē. Try this sentence
by the method already recom-
mended.

4 From rēiciō.

5 For irregularity of declension,
see 200.

6 In number = to the number.

260.

7 In sē, towards himself.

8 Cf. cōnspectīt, p. 216, line 9.

9 Obsidum locō, in the place
of hostages = as hostages.

10 From dēcernō.

11 From cōnsūēscō.

12 Idōneam nactus tempestā-
tem. Cf. p. 216, line 5.

13 Cōnsendere in nāvēs. Cf.
nāvēs cōnsendere, p. 216, l. 7.
Labienō\(^1\) in continentē cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frumentārium prōvidēret, quaque\(^2\) in Galliā gerentur cognōsceret, cōnsiliumque prō\(^3\) tempore et prō re eaperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus\(^4\) et parī numero equitum quem\(^5\) in continentē reliquēbat sōlis occāsū nāvēs\(^6\) solvit; et īnī Africō prōvectus, ortā lūce\(^7\) sub sinistrā\(^8\) Britanniam relictam conspexit.

Accēssum\(^9\) est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridīanō ferē\(^10\) tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est visus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvis cognōvit, cum\(^11\) māgnae manūs cō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterrita, ā lītore discēserant āc sē in superiore loca abdiderant.\(^22\)

Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōncō captō, ubi ex captīvis cognōvit quō in locō\(^13\) hostium cōpiāe cōnsēdissent,\(^14\) dē\(^15\) tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit. Noctū progressus mīlia passuum circiter duodecim hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus\(^16\) est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad fūmen progressī ex locō superiore nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coeptērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē\(^17\) in silvās

---

\(^1\) Labienō ... relictō. See 412.

\(^2\) Quaeque = et quae. The que connects prōvidēret and cognōsceret: and might find out what was going on in Gaul.

\(^3\) Prō tempore et prō re, as the time and circumstances required.

\(^4\) Quinque legionibus. See top of page 218.

\(^5\) Pari ... quem, with a number equal (to that) which.


\(^7\) Ortā lūce, light having arisen = at daybreak; ortā, from orior.

\(^8\) Supply manū; under the left hand = on the left.

\(^9\) Accēssum est ad, it was one to = they reached. See 415 (2).


\(^11\) Concessive. See 375.

\(^12\) From abdō.

\(^13\) Quō in locō, in what place. Compare for order quō ex portū, p. 218, line 1.

\(^14\) From cōnsidō.

\(^15\) During. Cf. p. 216, lines 5 and 6.

\(^16\) Compare for meaning cōnspexit, line 7.

\(^17\) Sē abdiderunt: cf. line 13.
abdidërunt, locum nancī¹ ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum. Ipsi ex silvis rāri² prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intra mūnītiōnēs ingredī³ prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adjectō,⁴ locum cēperunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis vulneribus acceptūs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius⁵ Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et⁶ quod locī nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi cōnsumptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

Postrūdiē ējus diēi māne tripartītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsit, ut eōs qui fūgerant⁷ perseverance tur.

[While Cæsar was in pursuit of the enemy, messengers came to tell him that a violent wind had dashed his ships upon the shore and broken up many of them, so that he was obliged to return. Ten days were spent in hauling the ships up on land and strongly intrenching them; then, leaving men to guard and repair them, he resumed his advance.

Cæsar crossed the Thames where the river was fordable, at what point is uncertain, meeting all the time with a determined resistance from the Britons, but at last forcing them to submission. The brave Cassivellaunus, chief of the Britons, did his best to defend his country, and showed himself a worthy antagonist even of Cæsar; nor would he yield to the Roman till his principal dependents had dispersed with their troops and deserted him. The autumnal equinox was now at hand, and Cæsar thought it unsafe to remain longer in Britain.]

Obsidibus acceptūs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs⁸ invenit refectūs. Hīs dōductūs, quod et captūvōrum māgnūm numerum habēbat, et nōnnullae tempestāte déperierant⁹ nāvēs, duōbus commētītibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit, āc,

¹ Cf. p. 216, line 5, and note.
² Here and there.
³ Ingredi prohibēbant: cf. ēgregi prohibēbant, p. 217, line 3, and note.
⁴ From adiciō.
⁵ Too far.
⁶ Both.
⁷ Distinguish between fugiō and fugō.
⁸ We should expect nāvēsque.
⁹ From dēperco.
summā tranquillitāte consecūtā, secundā initiā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

THE CUSTOMS AND HABITS OF THE BRITONS.

449. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsā memoria prōditum dīcunt; marītima pars ab iīs qui praedae ac bellī inferentī causā ex Belgīs transierant. Hominum est infinita multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia, fērē Gallicās consimilia; pecorum māgnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere, aut nummō aereō, aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus exāminātis pro nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in marītimās ferrum, sed ējus exiguā est cōpia. Māteria cūjusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgnum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre sās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātīisque causā.

Ex ēis omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī qui Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est marītima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt consūtūdine. Interiōrēs plēriique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt

---

1. From inēō; with vigiliā.
3. Quōs nātōs, whom (to have been) born in the island itself; by memory (to have been) handed down, they say. That is, who, they say, according to tradition (memorium prōditum), were born in the island itself.
4. Supply esse, as also with nātōs.
5. How otherwise might this be?
7. From aes.
8. Supply esse.
9. For the sake of their mind and pleasure = for pastime. Cf. for the order praedae... causā, note 6.
10. Understand iī, those, as the antecedent of quī. See p. 130, note 3.
11. Interiōrēs plērique, the people of the interior for the most part.
12. From carō.
vestitū. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō ūnicīunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiorēs sunt in pūgnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnē partē corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

1 On this account.
2 In appearance. See 260.
3 Capillō ... prōmissō: descriptive ablative (341). They are with long hair = they let their hair grow long.

4 Parte ... rāsā: another descriptive ablative. They are with every part of the body shaven = they shave the whole body. Rāsā, from rādō.
VOCABULARIES.
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

In this vocabulary words inclosed in brackets are, in most cases, those which are given in Latin lexicons and special vocabularies as the primitives of those against which they are set. But, except in compounds, it would be more correct to regard the bracketed words as connected with the others in formation from a common root or stem. It is on this ground that such instances will be found as metus referred to metus, and metuō to metus. Neither is, strictly speaking, derived from the other, but both are formed from the stem metu.

Words printed in Gothic Italic type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in small capitals.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupil should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

ä or ab

ät or ab, prep. w. abl., away from, by.
ab-dō, 3, -dī, -ditum, remove, conceal. Cf. ēclō.
ab-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, lead away, take off.
ab-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go from, go off, go away. (327.)
ab-icīō, 3, -icēi, -iectum [iacīō], throw off, throw down.
abīeś, -ei, r., fir-tree. (11. 4.)
ab-sum, -esse, āfiū, be away, absent, distant; with ā or ab and abl.
āē, conj. sec atque.
ac-cēdō, 3, -cēssī, -cessum [ad], go or come near, approach. Accede. Cf. approquinō.
ac-ccendō, 3, -cendi, -census [ad, and supposed candō], kindle, inflame.
accidō, 3, -cidī, — [ad, cadō], fall upon, fall out, happen. Accident. Cf. incidō and ēvēniō.
acciπō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [ad, capiō], (take to), receive, accept; suffer.

ad-imō

accǔsā, 1 [ad, causa], accuse.
ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., sharp, keen; active. (150.) Acūm. Cf. acūtus.
acerbūs, -a, -um, adj. [ācer], bitter, sour, harsh.
aēces, -ēi, r., [ācer], edge; order of battle.
aēriter, adv. [ācer], sharply, eagerly.
accūtus, -a, -um, adj. [acūo, sharpen], sharp. Cf. ācer.
ad, prep. w. acc., to, towards, near.
ad-eō, adv., to this, thus far; so, so very.
ad-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go to, approach, visit. (327.)
ad-ferō, adferre, attulī, allātum (adī), bear to, bring. (321.)
ad-hūc, adv., hitherto, up to this time.
ad-flō, 1, blow upon.
ad-icīō, 3, -jēcī, -iectum [iacīō], (throw to or against), add, join to.
ad-imō, 3, -ēmī, -emptum [emō], (take to one's self from another), take away, remove.
ad-ipiscor, 3, adeptus [spiscor], get, obtain. Cf. potior.
ad-jungō, 3, -jānī, -junctum, add, join. Adjunct.
ad-juvō, 1, -jūvī, -jūtum, aid, help.
ad-ministrō, 1, manage, do, perform, administer.
ad-miror, 1, wonder at, admire.
ad-modum, adv., very.
ad-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum (move up or towards), apply, employ.
ad-orior, 4, -ortus (rise up against), attack. Cf. aggregor.
ad-rēpō, 3, -rēpsī, -rēptum, creep towards, steal slowly up.
ad-spicio (asp), 3, -spexī, -spectum [ad, specīō], look at; look.
adspectus, -ās, m. [adspicio], sight, appearance, aspect.
ad-sum, -esse, -īnī (affīnī), be present, stand by, side with, w. dat.
adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [ado-lēscō, grow], youth, young person. Adolescence. Cf. juvenis.
ad-veniō, 4, -venī, -ventum, come to, arrive. Cf. perveniō.
adventus, -ās, m. [adveniō], approach, arrival. Advent.
ad-versus, prep. w. acc., against, towards.
ad-versus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of adverīō], opposite, opposed, adverse; res adversae, adversity.
aedificium, -i, n. [aedificō], building. Edifice.
aedificō, 1 [aedis, faciō], build.
aedis (ēs), -is, f., building, temple; plur., house.
aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj., sick, weak, feeble. (71.)
Aemilius, -i, m., Aemilius, a Roman consul. (79.)
aequālis, -e, adj. [aequus], equal; noun, equal in age, companion.
aequus, -a, -um, adj., level, equal; calm.
āēr, āeris, m., air.
aereus, -a, -um [aes], of copper, of bronze.
aes, aeries, m., copper, bronze; money.
aestās, -ātis, f., summer.
aestus, -ātis, m., tide.
aetās, -ātis, f., age, time of life.
(105.)
afligō, 3, -xi, -ctum [ad], cast down, prostrate, ruin.
África, -ae, f., África.
Áfricānus, -i, m. [África], Áfricanus, surname of Scipio.
Áfricus, -i, m., south-west (wind).
ager, agrī, m., field, territory. Cf. campus. (65.)
agger, -eris, m. [ad, gerō], (what is carried to, i.e.) materials for a mound; mound, rampart.
aggregor, 3, -gressus [ad, gradiāre], go to; attack. Aggressive. Cf. adorior.
agitō, 1 [frequentative of agō], shake, disturb, vex, chase. Agitate.
āgnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nitum [ad, (g)nōscō, know], recognize. Cf. cognōscō.
agō, 3, ēgī, ēctum, drive, lead, act, do.
agricola, -ae, m. [ager, colō], farmer.
agri cultūra, -ae, f. [ager, colō], agriculture. Cf. agricola.
āla, -ae, f., wing.
albus, -a, -um, adj., white. Cf. candidus.
Alexander, -drī, m., Alexander, king of Macedon.
aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius], belonging to another; another's. Alien.
alimentum, -î, n. [ālō], nourishment, food, provisions.
alquandō, adv. [alius], at some time, ever; formerly, once. Cf. őlim.
aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron., some one, some. (270.)
alius, -a, -ud, adj., another, other; alius ... alius, one ... another. (201.)
al-loquor [adî], 3, -locâtus [ad], speak to, address.
alō, 3, -uī, -itum and -tum, nourish, support, strengthen; keep.
Alpēs, -ium, r. , the Alps.
alter, -era, -crum, adj., the other (of two); alter ... alter, the one ... the other; as num. adj., second. (200.)
altus, -a, -um, adj., high, deep.
ambō, -ae, -ō, num. adj., both.
ambulō, 1, walk, take a walk.
America, -ae, r., America.
amicitia, -ae, r. [amicus], friendship.
amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō], friendly; noun, friend.
ā-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, send away, let go, lose. Cf. perdō.
amnis, -is, m., river. (154, 172.)
amō, 1, love, like, be fond of. (319.)
amplus, -a, -um, adj., large, splendid, renowned. AMPLE.
an, conj., or, used in the second member of a double question.
ancilla, -ae, r., maid-servant.
ancora, -ae, r., anchor.
Ancus, -î, Ancus, fourth king of Rome.
Androclus, -î, m., Androclus.
anguis, -is, m., snake, serpent. (154.)
angustiae, -ārum, r. [angustus, narrow], narrow pass. Cf. Eng. "narrow." 
animal, -ālis, n. [anima, breath], living being, animal. (149.)
animus, -î, m., mind, soul, spirit. (273.)
annus, -i, m., year. ANNUAL.
änser, -eris, m., goose.
antē, prep. w. acc., before.
antēa, adv. [ante], before.
antē-cēdō, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum, go before. Cf. antecēō.
antē-cē, -āre, -āri, ——, go before, surpass. Cf. antecēdō.
antēcūs, -a, -um, adj. [ante], old, ancient. ANTIQUITY. Cf. vetus.
ānulus, -i, m., ring, finger-ring.
aper, aprī, m., wild boar.
aperiō, 4, -uī, -tum, open.
apertus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of aperiō], uncovered, open.
ap-pellō, 1 [ad], address, call, name. APPEAL.
ap-petō, 3, -iī, or -iī, -itum [ad], seek after, strive for.
ap-propinquō, 1 [ad], come near, approach. Cf. accēdō.
aptō, 1, fit, apply, adjust. ADAPT.
apud, prep. w. acc., with, by, near, among.
Āpūlia, -ae, r., Apulia, a division of Italy.
aqua, -ae, r., water. AQUATIC.
aquila, -ae, r., eagle.
āra, -ae, r., altar.
arātrum, -i, n. [arō], plough.
aritror, 1, think, suppose, believe. (429.)
arbor, -oris, r., tree.
arceō, 2, -uī, -tum, keep off.
arces, -ūs, m., bow. ARC.
Ariovistus, -î, m., Ariovistus, king of a German tribe.
arma, -ōrum, n. [armō], arms, weapons, tools.
arō, 1, plough.
Arpinum, -i, n., Arpinum, a town in Italy.

ars, artis, r., art.

arvum, -i, n. [arō], ploughed land, field.

arx, arcis, r., citadel. (163.)

Aescalaphus, -i, m., Aascalaphus.

Asia, -ae, r., Asia.

asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough, harsh, severe. Asperity.

asylum, -i, n., place of refuge, asylum.

at, conj., but. (393.)

ätér, -tra, -trum, adj., black, sable.

Athenae, -ärum, r., Athens.

Atheniensis, -e, adj., [Athenae], of Athens, Athenian.

at-que (before vowels and consonants, ąc before consonants only) [ad, in addition], and also, and especially, and. Cf. et and -que.

atrōx, -ōcis, adj. [ätēr], savage, fierce, harsh, cruel. Atrocity.

Atticus, -i, m., Atticus, a friend of Cicero.

attingō, 3, -tīgī, -tactum [ad, tangō], touch, approach, arrive at, reach.

auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō, increase], maker, author.

auctorītās, -ātis, r. [auctor], counsel, advice, authority.

audācter, adv. [audāx], boldly.

audāx, -ācis, adj. [augeō], daring, bold. (164.) Audacious.

audēō, 2, ausus [audāx], dare, be bold. (p. 177, note 2.)

audiō, 4, hear, listen. (223.) Audience.

au-ferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātum [ab(s)], bear off; carry away. (321.) Ablative.

augeō, 2, auxī, auctum, increase, enlarge.

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], of gold, golden.

auris, -is, r., ear.

aurum, -i, n., gold.

aut, conj., or; aut... aut, either... or. Cf. vel.

autem, conj. (never the first word), but, however, moreover. (393.)

autumnus, -i, m., autumn.

auxilium, -i, n. [augeō], help, aid, support; plur., auxiliaries.

avārus, -a, -um, adj., greedy, rapacious. Avaricious.

ä-vertō, 3, -ti, -sum, turn away from, avert.

avis, -is, r., bird. (154.)

avunculus, -i, m. [diminutive of avus], (maternal) uncle.

avus, -i, m., grandfather.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign, barbarous, barbarian.

beatūs, -a, -um, adj. [beō, bless], blessed, happy. Beatitude.

Belgae, -ärum, m., the Belgae, a Gallic tribe.

bellō, 1 [bellum], war, carry on war. Cf. bellum gerō.

bellum, -i, n. [bellō], war. (38.)

bellus, -a, -um, adj., pretty, charming, lovely.

bene, adv. [bonus], well.

beneficium, -i n. [bene, faciō], benefit, favor.

benignō, adv. [benignus], kindly.

benignus, -a, -um, adj. [bene, genus], (of good birth), kind, good. Benignant.

bēstia, -ae, r., beast.

bibō, 3, bibi, pōtum, drink. Im-

bibe.

bonum, -i, n. [bonus], good thing, blessing; plur., goods, possessions.
bonus - a, -um, adj., comp. melior, superl. optimus; good. (71, 208.)
bōs, bovis, m. and f., ox, cow. (262.)
Bostonia, -ae, f., Boston.
bracchium, -i, n., arm.
brevis, -e, adj., short, brief.
Brātānii, -ōrum, m., the Britons.
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain.
Brūtus, -ī, m., Brūtus, a Roman surname.

C., abbreviation for Gājus.
cachinnō, 1, laugh aloud. Cf. rīdeo.
cădō, 3, cecidī, cāsum, fall.
caeceus, -a, -um, adj., blind.
cădēdō, 3, cecidī, cæsum, cut, cut to pieces; kill.
caelum, -i, n., sky, heaven.
caeruleus, -a, -um, adj. [for caelu-
len, from caelum], dark-blue.
Caesar, (J.), -aris, m., Jūlius Ces-
sar, c. famous Roman.
Cāius, -ī, m. See Gājus.
calathus, -ī, m., basket.
calcar, -āris, n. [calx, heel], spur.
(149.)
callēns, -entis, adj. [P. of callēnō,
be hard], hard, tough.
calliditās, -ātis, f. [callidus, cunning], shrewdness, cunning.
calor, -ōris, m. [cælō, be warm], heat, warmth. Caloric.
Campānia, -ae, f., Campania, a
division of Italy.
campus, -i, m., field. Camp. Cf. ager.
candidus, -a, -um, adj. [candēō,
shine], bright, fair, white. Candid.
Cf. albus.
canis, -īs, n. and f., dog. (153.)
Canine.

cannae, -ārum, n., Cannae, a vil-
lage in Apulia.
cannēnsis, -e, adj. [Cannae], of
Cannae.
cantium, -i, n., Kent (in Britain).
cantō, 1 [canō], sing. Chant.
cantus, -ūs, m. [canō], singing, song.
(278.) Chant.
capillus, -i, m., hair (of the head).
Capillary.
capiō, 3, cēpī, captum, take, seize
(235); consilium capiō, adopt a plan. Capture.
captīvus, -ī, m. [capiō], captive,
prisoner.
caput, -itis, n., head. (105.) Capital.
Carbō, -onis, m., Carbo, a Roman.
career, -eris, m., prison. Incar-
cerate.
careō, 2, -uī, -itum, be without, want.
carmen, -inis, n., song, poem. (278.)
carō, carnis, t., flesh.
carpō, 3, -sī, -tam, pluck.
carrus, -ī, m., wagon, cart. Car.
Carthaginīensis, -e, adj. [Car-
thāgo], of Carthage, Carthaginian.
Carthagō, -inis, t., Carthage, a
town in Africa.
Carthagō Nova, a town in Spain.
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious.
castra, -ōrum, n., camp.
cāsus, -ūs, m. [cādō], a falling; mis-
chance, misfortune, chance.
catellus, -i, m. [diminutive of catu-
lus], little dog, puppy.
Catilīna, -ae, f., Catiline, a famous
Roman conspirator.
Catō, -onis, m., Cato, a celebrated
Roman censor.
cauda, -ae, f., tail.
causa, -ae, f., cause, reason; causā
(after a genitive), for the sake.
caveō, 2, cāvī, cautum, beware, guard against.
céō, 3, căssī, căssum, go, depart, withdraw; grant.
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift. (170.)
Celerity.
celester, adv. [celer], swiftly.
célo, 1, conceal. Cf. abdō.
cēseo, 2, -uī, -um, reckon; think, deem, be of opinion. Censure.
(429.)
centum, num. adj., indecl., hundred. Cent.
Cerēs, -eris, f., Ceres, goddess of agriculture. Cereal.
certē, adv. [certus], certainly, surely, of course.
certō, 1, contend, strive, vie with.
certus, -a, -um, adj., fixed, determined, certain, sure; certiorem fació, make (one) more certain, inform.
[cēterus], -a, -um, adj. (usually in plur.), the other, the rest.
cibus, -ī, m., food. Cf. pābulum.
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero, a famous Roman orator.
Cimbrī, -ūrum, m., the Cimbrī, a German tribe.
cingō, 3, cinxi, cinctum, bind, encircle, surround.
circiter, adv. [circus, circle], round about; about.
circum-dūcō, 3, -duxi, -ductum, lead around.
circum-siliō, 4, -iī, — [saliō], jump or hop around.
circum-veniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum, surround; circumvenient.
civis, -is, m. and f., citizen. (154.)
civitas, -ātis, v. [civis], (body of citizens), state; citizenship. City.
clādēs, -is, f., destruction, defeat, disaster.
clāmitō, 1 [frequentative of clāmō], cry out, call out. Cf. exclamō.
clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō], shout, cry. Clamor.
clārus, -a, -um, adj., clear, renowned, famous; loud.
clāsis, -is, f., class of citizens; fleet. (154.)
elīēns, -entis, m., client. (163.)
coepi, coepisse (defective verb, tenses from pres. stem wanting), began.
coeceē, 2, -uī, -itum [co(m), arceō, inclose], confine, check, restrain.
cognōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nītum [com, (g)nōscō], learn, recognize, know. Cf. āgnōscō.
cōgō, 3, -ēgī, -actum [com, agō], drive together, compel.
cohortor, 1 [co(m), intensive], exhort, urge, encourage.
Collatinus, -ī, m., Collatinus, surname of Lucius Tarquinius.
collēga (conl.), -ae, m. [legō], (one who is chosen with another), colleague.
colligō (conl.), 3, -legī, -lectum [com, legō], collect.
collis, -is, m., hill. (154.) Cf. mōns.
coloquium, -i, n. [coloquor], conversation, colloquy.
coloquor, 3, -locūtus [com], speak together, converse.
colo, 3, coluī, cultum, cultivate, till. Cf. incola, agricola.
colōnīa, -ae, f. [colōnus, husbandman, colō], colony.
color, -ōris, m., color.
columba, -ae, f., dove.
com (col, con, cor, co), primitive form of cum, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.
comes, -itis, m. and f. [comitor (com, cō)], comrade, companion.
comitor, 1 [comes], accompany, attend.

commeātus, -ūs, m. [commoēg, go to and fro], passage, trip, expedition.

com-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -mīssum, (join together), commit; proelium committere, join battle, engage, begin fighting.

com-modus, -ā, -um, adj. (that has proper measure), convenient, suitable.

com-moror, 1, stay, linger, delay, remain.

com-movēō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, (put in violent motion), shake, disturb, agitation. Commotion.

com-muniō, 4, (fortify strongly), secure, intrench.

com-perīō, 4, -perī, -pertum, ascertain, learn, find out.


com-primō, 3, -pressī, -pressum [premō], press together; check, suppress.

con-cuttō, 3, -cussī, -cassum [com, quatiō], shake violently.

con-ferō, conferre, contuli, collātum [comil], [com], bring together, collect; sē conferre, betake one's self. Confer.

con-ficiō, 3, -feci, -fectum [com, faciō], make, accomplish, carry out.

con-fiteor, 2, -fessus [com, fateor], confess.

con-fīgō, 3, -xī, -ctum [com], contend, fight. Conflict.

con-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [com, jacio], (throw together), throw, hurl.

con-junx, -jugis, m. and f. [com, jungō, join], spouse, wife; husband.

cōnor, 1, attempt, try.

cōn-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsum, [com, scandō, climb], ascend, embark; go on board.

cōn-sequor, 3, -cētus [com], follow close upon; follow.

cōn-sidō, 3, -sēdī, -sēssum [com], (sit together), encamp.

consilium, -i, n. [cōnsūlō, cōnsul], advice, counsel, prudence; plan, design.

con-similīs, -c, adj., very similar, quite like.

con-spiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectum [com, speciō, look], look at attentively; observe, see, behold.

con-spicor, 1, [cōnspiciō], see at a glance, descry, catch sight of.

cōnstāns, -antis, adj., [P. of cōn-stō], firm, steady.

con-stat, 1, stitit, impers., it is evident, clear.

con-stituō, 3, -ūī, -ūtum [com, statuō], (place or put together), station, place; determine.

con-suēscō, 3, -suēvī, -suētum [com], become accustomed; in perf., be accustomed.

con-suētūdō, -inis, r. [cōnsuētus], habit, custom.

cōnsul, -ulis, m. [cōnsulō, consult], consul. (134.)

cōnsulāris, -e, adj. [cōnsul], pertaining to a consul, consular; noun, ex-consul.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. [cōnsul], office of consul, consulship.

con-sūmō, 3, -sumpsi, -sumptum [com], take up completely, consume.

con-testō, 3, -psē, -ptum [com], despise. Contemn.

contemplor, 1, look at, observe. Contemplate.
con-tendō, 3, -dī, -tum [com],
(draw tight), exert one’s self, strive; hasten. CONTEND.

contentiō, -onis, r. [contendō],
struggle, exertion, effort; contention.

contentus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of contineō], contented; w. abl.

contestor, 1 [com, testis, witness],
call to witness, invoke.

contineō, 2, -ūi, -tentum [com, teneō], hold together, hold, contain.

contrā, prep. w. acc., against.

con-valēscō, 3, -valūi — [com, valēō], get well, grow strong. Con-valescent. Cf. valēō.

conveniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum [com], come together, assemble.

convertō, 3, -tī, -sum [com], turn around, turn, change. CONVERT.

cōpia, -ae, r. [com, ops], abundance, wealth; plur., troops, forces.

cor, cordis, n., heart.

cōram, prep. w. abl., in presence of.

Corinthus, -ī, r., Corinth. (11.4)

Coriolānus, -ī, m., Coriolanus, sur-name of C. Marcius, a Roman consul.

Cornēlia, -ae, r. Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi.

Cornēlius, -ī, m., Cornelius, a Roman family name.

cornū, -ūs, n., horn.

corpus, -ōris, n., body. (140.) Corse.

corrīgō, 3, -rēxi, -rēctum [com, regō], make straight, reform, correct.

corripiō, 3, -uī, -reptum [com, rapiō], seize, take hold of.

cor-rumpō, 2, -rūpī, -ruptum,
[com], break in pieces, destroy; corrupt, bribe.

cortex, -icis, m. and r., bark, shell, rind.

cōrus, -ī, m., north-west (wind).

cotidiē, adv. [quot, diēs], daily.

crās, adv., to-morrow.

Crassus, -ī, m., Crassus, a rich Roman, contemporary of Caesar.

creator, -ōris, m. [creō], creator.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent, numerous.

erēdō, 3, -didī, -ditum, trust, believe; w. dat. CREDIT.

creō, 1, make, create; choose, elect.

Croesus, -ī, m., Croesus, king of Lydia.

crūdēlis, c, adj., cruel, hard-hearted.

crūdēliter, adv. [crūdēlis], cruelly.

cruentus, -a, -um, adj. [crūor], stained with blood, bloody.

cruor, -ōris, m., blood, gore. Cf. sanguis.

crūs, crūris, n., leg.

culpā, -ae, r. [culpō], blame, fault. CULPABLE. Cf. vitium.

culpō, 1 [culpa], blame, find fault with.

cultr, -trī, m., knife. COULTER.

cum, conj., when; since, as; though, although. (372 fl.)

cum, prep. w. abl., with.

Cumae, -ārum, r., Cumae, a town in Campania.

cūnae, -ārum, r., cradle.

cunctātiō, -onis, r. [cunctor], delaying, delay.

cunctor, 1, linger, hesitate.

cupiditās, -ātis, r. [cupidus, cupiō], desire, eagerness. CUPIDITY.

Cupīdō, -inis, m. [cupidus], Cupid, god of love.

cupiō, 3, -ivi, or -iī, -itum, desire, be eager for. Cf. désiderō.
cūr, adv. [quā, rē], why, wherefore.
cūra, -ae, f. [cūrō], care, anxiety.
cūrō, 1 [cūra], care for, take care.
cūrrō, 3, cūrrū, cūrrus, rum.
currus, -īs, m. [cūrrō], chariot, car.
cursus, -īs, m. [cūrrō], a running, course.
curvus, -a, -um, adj., curved, bent; bending.
custōdiō, 4 [custōs], guard, protect, defend.
custōs, -ōdis, m. and f. [custōdiō], guardian, keeper. Custodian.
cymba, -ae, f. boat. Cf. nāvicaulъ.
Cyrus, -īs, m., Cyrus, king of Persia.

de-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum (put from one's self), surrender, deliver up.
de-dūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, lead away, draw down, launch. De-duct.
de-fatigō, 1, tire out, exhaust.
de-fendō, 3, -dī, -fēnsum [dēfensor], (strike off from), defend, protect.
de-fensor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō], defender, protector.
de-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum (bring from), deliver; report.
de-fessus, -a, -um, adj., tired out, weary.
de-ficio, 3, -feci, -fectum [faciō], (make away from), revolt; fail, be wanting.
de-formis, -e, adj. [forma], mis-shapen, ugly; base, disgraceful.
de-inde, adv. (from thence), then, afterwards.
delectō, 1, delight.
delectus, -ūs, m. [dēligō], selection; levy.
deleo, 2, -ēvi, -ētum, destroy. De-lete.
deliciae, -ārum, f., delight, darling.
de-migrō, 1, migrate from; emigrate, remove.
Dēmosthenēs, -is, m., Demosthenes, a famous Athenian orator.
dēnique, adv., finally, at last.
dēns, dentis, m., tooth. Dentist.
de-percō, 4, -iī, ——, go to ruin, perish, be lost.
de-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, put down, put by, lay down. Depo-nent.
de-scendō, 3, -diī, -scēnsum [scandō, climb], come down, descend.
de-serō, 3, -uī, -tum, desert, abandon.
dēsiderō, 1, desire, long for, miss (319). Cf. optō, volō, and cupiō.
dé-siliō, 4, -siliū [saliō, leap], leap down. Cf. subsiliō and tran-siliō.
dē-sistō, 3, -stitū, -stītum [stand off or apart], leave off, cease; desist.
dē-spērō, 1 [spēs], be hopeless, despair.
dē-sum, - esse, - suī, —, be wanting, lack; w. dat. Cf. ēspiciō.
dē-trahō, 3, -traxī, -tractum, draw off; take away.
deus, -i, m., god. (262.)
dēvorō, 1, swallow up, devour.
Diāna, -ae, r., Diana, goddess of the chase.
dicō, 3, dixi, dictum, say, tell.
dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dicō], chief magistrate, dictator.
dictātūra, -ae, r. [dictātor], office of dictator, dictatorship.
dictūtō [frequentative of dicō], keep saying.
dīēs, -ī, m. and r., day. (253.)
differō, differre, distuli, dilātum [dis], scatter, separate, put off; differ. (321.)
difficilis, -e, adj. [dis, facilis, far from easy], hard, difficult. (207.)
digitus, -ī, m., finger. Digit.
dignitās, -ītis, r. [dignus], worth, dignity; office.
dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy.
diligēns, -entis, adj. [P. of diligō], diligent, careful.
diligēnter, adv. [diligēns], diligently.
diligentia, -ae, r. [diligēns], diligence, carefulness.
di-ligō, 3, -lexī, -lectum [legō], esteem, love. (319.)
dimicō, 1, fight, contend. Cf. pugnō.
di-mīdīus, -a, -um, adj. [medīns], half.
di-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -mīssum, send away, let go.
di-moveō, 2, -movi, -mōtum (move asunder), separate, drive away.
di-rūō, 3, dirūi, dirūtum, tear asunder, destroy. Cf. rescindō.
dis, dī (a prefix denoting separation), asunder, apart, in different directions. Cf. differō, discēdō, dissimilis, dīmittō, dīrūō.
Dis, Dītis, m., Dīs, another name of Pluto.
dis-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, depart, withdraw, go off.
discipulus, -ī, m. [discō], learner, scholar, pupil. Disciple.
discō, 3, didicī, —, learn.
dissimilis, -e, adj., (far from like), unlike, dissimilar. (207.)
dīū, adv., for a long time, long.
dīves, -ītus, adj. (comp. dītor, superl. dīvītissimus), rich. (167.3.)
dīvitiae, -ārum, r. [dīves], riches, wealth.
dō, dare, dedī, datum, give; put.
doceō, 2, -ui, - tum, teach, show.
doctus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of doceō], learned. Doctor.
dolor, -ōris, m., pain, grief. Dol-orous.
dolus, -ī, m., trick, deceit.
domīcilium, -ī, n. [domus], home, abode.
domina, -ae, r. [dominās], mistress.
dominor, 1 [dominās], be a lord and master, rule. Domineer.
dominus, -ī, m. [domina], lord, master. (66.)
domus, -īs, r., house, home; domī, at home. (262, 330.)
dōnō, 1 [dōnum], give, present.
Donate.
dōnum, -ī, n. [dō], gift, present.
dormiō, 1, sleep. Dormitory.
Drīsus, -i, m., Drusus, a Roman.
dubītō, 1 [dubius], hesitate, doubt. INDUBITABLE.
dubium, -i, n. [dubius], doubt.
dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo], doubtful. Dubious.
ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo, centum], two hundred.
dūcō, 3, -dīxī, -ducēmur [dux], lead. Duillus (C.), -ī, m., Caius Duilius, a Roman general.
dulcis, -e, adj., sweet, pleasant. Dulcet. Cf. suavis.
dum, adv., while, as long as; until.
duo, duae, duo, num. adj., two. (311. 4.)
duo-decim, num. adj., indecl. [decem], twelve.
duo-de-trigintā, num. adj., indecl., twenty-eight.
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard. Exdure. Cf. difficilis.
dux, ducis, m. and r. [dūcō], leader, general. Duke. Cf. imperator.

ecce, interf., lo! see! see there!
ě-dīcō, 3, -dīxī, -dictum, speak out, declare, proclaim. Edict.
edō, edere or ēsse, ēdī, ēsum or ēsum, eat.
edūcō, 1, bring up, train, educate.
ě-dūcō, 3, -dīxī, -ducēmur, lead out, bring away.
ě-ferō, efficere, extulī, ēlātum [ex], bear out, bring forth. (221.) Elate.
efficēō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [ex, faciō], bring to pass, effect, complete; make, construct.
egēns, -entis, adj. [P. of egeō], in want, needy, destitute.
ego, pers. pron., I. (264.)
ě-gredior, 3, ēgressus [gradior, step], go out, go forth; disembark, land. Cf. exeō.
ěgregiē, adv. [ēgregius], remarkably, excellently.
ě-gregius, -a, -um, adj. [grex], remarkable, excellent. Egregious.
egēlaus, -antis, adj., choice, elegant.
elephantus, -ī, m., elephant.
ě-lūdō, 3, -si, -sum, deceive, mock; elude.
ě-mergō, 3, -si, -sum, arise, come forth; emerge.
emō, 3, ēnī, emptum, buy, purchase.
enum, conj. (never the first word), for. Cf. nam.
Ennius, -ī, m., Ennius, father of Roman poetry.
ě-nuntiō, 1, say out, divulge, declare, report. Enunciate.
ě, see ex.
egō, adv. [is], to that place, thither, there.
egō, īre, ītum, go. (327.)
egōdem, adv. [īdem], to the same place.
Ěpirus, -ī, r., Epirus, a division of Greece.
epistula, -ae, r., letter, epistle.
eques, -īs, m. [equus], horseman, knight.
equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [eques], pertaining to a horseman, equestrian.
equitātus, -ās, m. [equītātus, eques], body of equites, cavalry.
equītō, 1 [eques], (be a horseman), ride.
equus, -ī, m., horse.
egro, adv., therefore, accordingly.
Cf. igitur and itaque.
ě-ripīō, 3, -ui, -reptum [rapiō], snatch out, seize and bear off.
erō, 1, wander; err, mistake.
ē-rudiō, 4. [rudis, rough], train, teach, instruct.

esseđum, -i, n., two-wheeled war-chariot.
et, conj., and; et...et, both...and. Cf. atque, āc, and-que.
etiam, adv. and conj. [et, jam, and now], also, even.
et-si, conj., though, although.
Europā, -ae, f., Europe.
ē-vertō, 3. -tī, -sum, overturn, overthrow, destroy.
ē-volō, 1, fly away.
ex or ē, prep. w. abl., out of, from.
exāminō, 1 [exāmen, test], weigh, out, weigh.
excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of excellō], elevated, lofty, high.
ex-cipō, 3. -cēpī, -ceptum [capīō], take out, except; receive, welcome.
ex-clāmō, 1, cry out, exclam. Cf. clamātō.
ex-cūsō, 1 [causa], excuse.
ex-cutiō, 3. -cussī, -cussum [quartiō], shake out, strike off, drive away, cast out.
ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go out, come out. Extr. Cf. ēgregior.
ex-erceō, 2 [erceō], keep busy, employ; train. Exercise.
exercitus, -ūs, m. [exercēō], (the thing trained), army.
exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, small, slight.
expeditiō, -onis, f. [expediō], excursion, expedition.
ex-pellō, 3. -puli, -pulsum, drive out or away, expel.

ex-plicō, 1, -āvī, -ārum, and -āī, -ātum, unfold, explain.
explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrō], a searcher out, explorer; spy, scout.
ex-plōrō, 1, search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.
ex-pōnō, 3. -posuī, -positum, put or set out, expose; draw up, marshal.
ex-pūgnō, 1, take by storm, assault. Cf. oppūgnō.
ex-sistō, 3. -stī, -stītum (stand forth), exist, appear.
ex-specō, 1, await, wait for, expect.
ex-spīrō, 1, breath out, breath one's last, expire.
ex-stinguō, 3. -nxī, -nctum (quench completely), extinguish; kill, destroy.
ex-terreō, 2, -ī, -itum, frighten, affright.
ex-timēscō, 3. -timuī,— [timeō], fear greatly.
extrā, prep. w. acc., without, outside of. Cf. intrā.
ex-turbō, 1, thrust out, drive away.

faber, -brī, m., worker, carpenter. Fabric.

Fabius, -ī, m., Fabius, a famous Roman general.

Fabricius, -ī, m., Fabricius, a famous Roman general.

fābulā, -ae, f. [for, speak], story, tale, fable.

facilis, -e, adj. [faciō], (that can be done), easy to do, easy. Facility.

facinus, -oris, n. [faciō], (the thing done), deed; crime. Cf. sceleus.

faciō, 3. fēcī, factum, do, make.
fäagus, -i, v., beech-tree. (11. 4.) Falisci, -orum, m., the Faliscans, a people of Etruria.
false, adv. [falsus], falsely.
falsus, -a, -um, adj. [fallō, deceivē], deceptive, false.
fāma, -ae, f., [for, speak], rumor; fame, renown.
famēs, -is, f., hunger, famine.
fās, n., indecl. [for, speak], divine law; often translated as adj., right, lawful.
fascis, -is, m., bundle.
fatīgō, l, tire out, weary. Fatigue.
fātum, -i, n., [for, speak], (that which is spoken), fate, destiny.
faveō, 2, favī, fātum, be favorable to, favor, befriend; v. dat.
fēbris, -is, f. [fērebō, be hot], fever.
Februārius, -i, m., February. Often as adj.
fēliciter, adv. [fēlīx], luckily, fortunately.
fēlix, -icis, adj., lucky, fortunate.
fera, -ae, f., [ferus], wild animal, wild beast.
ferē, adv., nearly, for the most part, almost, about. Cf. paene.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, bring; ferunt, they say. (321.) Cf. portō and vehō.
ferōx, -ōcis, adj. [ferus], fierce, impetuous.
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], of iron, iron.
ferrum, -i, n., iron.
ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, cruel.
fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs], trusty, faithful. Cf. fiāns.
fidēlīter, adv. [fidēlis], faithfully.
fidēs, -ī, f. [fidō, trust], trust, faith.
fidus, -a, -um, adj. [fidō, trust], trusty, faithful.
fiā, -ae, f., daughter. (p. 8, note 1). Cf. nāta.
fiiliolus, -i, m. [diminutive of filius], little son.
filius, -i, m., son. (70.) Filial.
finiō, 4 [finis], end, finish. Finite.
finis, -is, m., end, boundary. (154.) Finitus, -a, -um, adj. [finis], bordering on, neighboring.
fio, fieri, factūs (supplies pass. to faciō), be made, become. (327.)
firmō, l [firmus], make strong.
firmus, -a, -um, adj. [firmō], steadfast, strong. Firm.
flagrō, l, burn.
flēctō, 3, -xi, -xum, bend, turn.
flēo, 2, flēvī, flētum, weep, cry.
flō, 1, blow.
flōs, flōris, m., flower. Floral.
flūmen, -inis, n. [flūō], (that which flows), river, stream. (172.)
flūō, 3, flūxi, flūxum, flow.
fluvius, -i, m. [flūō], (the flowing thing), river, stream. (172.)
foliō, 1, x, leaf. Foliage.
fōns, fontis, m., spring, fount, fountain.
forē, for futurum esse.
formidō, -inis, r., fear, terror.
forte, adv. [fors, chance], perchance, perhaps, possibly.
fortis, -e, adj., strong, brave, courageous.
fortiter, adv. [fortis], bravely, courageously.
fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis], strength, bravery, endurance, fortitude.
fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], fortune.
forum, -i, n., market-place; forum.
frangō, 3, frāgī, fractum, dash in pieces, break. Fracture.
frāter, -tris, m., brother. Frater.

frētus, -a, -um, adj., relying on, trusting to; w. abl.

frigidus, -a, -um, adj. [frigeō, freeze], cold, frigid.

frondōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frōns], covered with leaves, leafy.

frōns, frondis, f., leaf, foliage; garland of leaves.

frōns, -tis, f., brow, forehead. Front.

frūctus, -ūs, m. [fruor], fruit. Cf. frūmentum.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. [frūmentum], pertaining to grain; rés frūmentāria, grain-supply.

frūmentum, -ī, n. [fruor], corn, grain. Cf. frūctus.

fruor, 3, fructus, enjoy; w. abl. (304.)

frustrā, adv., in vain.

(frux), frūgis, f. (oftener plur.; gen. frūgum), [fruor], fruit of the earth, fruits. Cf. frūctus.

fuga, -ae, f. [fugiō, flee], flight.

fugiō, 3, fugī, — [fugū, fuga], run away. Fugitive.

fugō, 1 [fugiō, fuga], put to flight, chase, drive.

fungor, 3, functus, perform, discharge; w. abl. (304.) Function.

Gaïus, gen. Gāī (also written Cāius), m., Caius, a Roman first name.

Galba, -ae, m., Galba.

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. [Gallus], belonging to the Gauls, Gallic.

galliōna, -ae, f. [gallus, cock], hen.

Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul.

gandeō, 2, gāvīsus [gaudeō], be glad, rejoice. (p. 177, note 2.)

gaudium, -ī, n. [gaudeō], joy, delight.

gener, -erī, m., son-in-law.

gēns, gentis, f., clan, family. Gender.

genū, -ūs, n., knee. (245.)

genus, -eris, n., birth, race; kind, nature. Gender.

Germanus, -a, -um, adj., German; noun, a German.

gerō, 3, gessī, gestum, bear, carry; wage, manage, do.

gladiātor, -āris, m. [gladius], (swordsmen), gladiator.

gladius, -ī, m., sword.

glória, -ae, f., glory, fame, renown.

gracilis, -e, adj., slender. (207.)

gradus, -ūs, m., step. (245.) Grade.

Graecē, adv. [Graecus], in Greek.

Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., Grecian, Greek; noun, a Greek.

grāmen, -inis, n., grass.

grānīm, -ī, n., grain, seed.

grātulor, 1 [grātus], congratulate; w. dat.

grātus, -a, -um, adj., acceptable, pleasing. Grateful.

gravis, -e, adj., heavy, serious. Grave.

graviter, adv. [gravis], heavily, seriously.

grēnum, -ī, n., lap, bosom.

grex, gregis, m., flock, herd.

gustō, 1, taste, eat.

habeō, 2, have, hold.

habitō, 1 [frequentative of habeō], inhabit; dwell, live. (194.)

Hannibal, -alis, m., Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general.

Hasdrubal, -alis, m., Hasdrubal, a Carthaginian general, brother of Hannibal.
hasta, -ae, f., spear.
hauriō, 4, hausi, haustum, draw (water), drain. Exhaust.
Hector, -oris, m., Hector, chief of the Trojan warriors.
Henna, -ae, r., Henna, a city of Sicily.
heri, adv., yesterday.
hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron., this, this of mine; abl., hoc, on this account; as pers. pron., he, she, it. (275.)
hiems (hiemps), hiemis, r., winter; storm.
hinc, adv. [hic], from this place, hence.
Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain.
Hispānus, -ī, m., a Spaniard.
historia, -ae, f., history.
hodie, adv. [hoc, die], to-day.
Homērus, -ī, m., Homer, the earliest and greatest Greek poet.
homo, -inis, m. and f. (human being), man. (138.)
honestās, -ātis, f. [honestus], honor, integrity, honesty.
honōriāce, adv., honorably.
honor, -ōris, m., honor.
honōrō, 1 [honor], honor, respect.
hōra, -ae, f., hour.
Horātius, -ī, m., Horatius, Horace.
horridus, -a, -um, adj. [horrocr, sludder at], frightful, rough, wild.
Horrid.
hortor, 1, urge, exhort, encourage.
hortus, -ī, m., garden. (38.)
hospes, -itis, m. and f., host, guest, guest-friend. Hospital.
hostis, -is, m. and f., enemy. (149, 172.) Hostile.
hūc, adv. [for old form hōc], to this place, hither.
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. [homo], human; cultivated, refined.
humilis, -e, adj. [humus, ground], (pertaining to humus), low, lowly, humble, poor. (207.)
ibi, adv. [is], in that place, there.
idem, eadem, idem, determin. pron. [is], same. (270.)
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, proper.
Īdās, -uum, r. plur., the Ides (of the month). The thirteenth, except in March, May, July, and October; in those months the fifteenth. (244. 1.)
igitur, conj. (seldom the first word), therefore, then. Cf. ergō and itaque.
ignāvia, -ae, r. [ignāvus], laziness, idleness, cowardice.
ignāvus, -a, -um, adj. [in, not, gnāvus, busy], lazy, idle, cowardly.
ignis, -is, m., fire. (149.)
ignorō, 1 [ignārus, ignorant], not know, be ignorant of.
ille, -a, -ud, demon. pron., that (yonder); as pers. pron., he, she, it. (275.)
ilītāc, adv. [ille], to that place, thither, there.
imāgō, -inis, f., image, likeness, picture. (134.)
imitor, 1, imitate.
immānīs, -e, adj., huge, immense, monstrous. Cf. māgnus.
impendērō, 4 [in, pēs], (entangle the feet), impede, hinder, prevent.
im-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsate [in], urge on, impel, prompt.
imperator, -ōris, m. [imperō], commander, general. Emperor.
imperium, -ī, n. [imperō], command, authority, power. Empire.
imperō, 1 [imperium], order, command; w. dat.
impetrō, 1, accomplish; gain, procure, obtain. Cf. adipiscor.
impetus, -ōs, m. [impētus, rush upon], attack, onset. IMPETUOUS.
im-plorō, 1 [in], cry out to, beseech, implore.
im-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum [in], put or place upon.
improbus, -a, -um, adj. [in, not, probus, good], bad, wicked. Cf. malus.
im-prō-visō, adv. [videō], unexpectedly.
im-pudēns, -entis, adj. [in], shameless, impudent.
in, prep. w. acc. into, to, against, for; w. abl., in, on. (333, 1, 2.)
in, prefix, in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. un-, in-, not.
inānis, -e, adj., empty, useless.
in-cautus, -a, -um, adj., incautious, heedless.
in-certas, -a, -um, adj., uncertain.
in-cidō, 3, -cidi, -cāsum [cadō], fall into; happen, befall. Cf. accidō and evenīō.
in-cipō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], (take in hand), begin. Cf. ordinār.
in-cōgnitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.
incola, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], inhabitant.
in-colō, 3, -uī, — [incola], dwell in, inhabit, live, dwell. Cf. habitō and vivō.
in-columnis, -e, adj., unharmed, safe.
inde, adv. [is], hence.
indicium, -i, n., discovery, disclosure.
in-eō, -īre, -īē, -ītum, go in, enter; begin. (327.)
inferē, -ōrum, m. (inferus, below), inhabitants of the lower world, the dead. INFERNAL.
in-ferō, inferre, intulī, illātum (inl) (bear in or against), cause; bellum inferre, make war upon; w. dat. (321.)
infestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile, troublesome, dangerous. INFEST.
in-feliō, 3, -feclī, -fectūm [fæciō], stain, color.
in-finitus, -a, -um, adj. [finis], boundless, unlimited, infinite, vast.
in-flectō, 3, -xi, -xum, bend; change, alter. INFLECT.
in-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior, step], enter.
in-hīō, 1, gape at, long for.
in-imicus, -a, -um, adj. [amīcus], unfriendly, hostile; noun, enemy. (172.) INIMICAL.
inītum, -i, n. [incīō], beginning.
INITIAL.
injūria, -ae, f. [in, jūs], injustice, injury, wrong.
injustē, adv. [injustus], unjustly.
inopīa, -ae, f. [inops, without resources], want, poverty.
inquan, defective verb, say; inquit (placed after one or more quoted words), said he.
in-stituō, 3, -ūi, -ūtum [statuō, place], fix, determine, undertake. INSTITUTE.
instruēctus, -a, -um [P. of instruō], furnished, equipped.
in-struō, 3, -struēxi, -struēctum [struō, build], build up, form, INSTRUCT, teach.
in-sula, -ae, f., island. PENINSULA.
in-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, be in, among; w. dat. and in w. abl.
intel-legō, 3, -léxi, -léctum [inter], see into; understand. INTELLECT.
inter, prep. w. acc., between, among, amid.
inter-eō, -ire, -i, -itum, perish.
inter-dum, adv., sometimes.
inter-ficēō, 3, -fēci, -fectum [facio], kill, put to death. Cf. necō and occīdo.
interior, -us, adj. [no positive], inner, interior.
inter-pellō, 1, interrupt; entreat, importune.
inter rogō, 1, ask, inquire, question. (382.) INTERROGATION.
inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, be present at or among; w. dat. Cf. ad-sum.
intra, prep. w. acc., within. Cf. extra.
in-tueor, 2, look towards, at, or upon. INTUITION.
inus, adv. [in], within, inside.
in-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find, meet with, discover. INVENT. Cf. reperiō.
in-vicem, adv., by turns, in turn, alternately.
in-victus, -a, -um, adj., unconquerable, invincible.
in-vitō, 1, invite.
in vitus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling, reluctant.
in-vocō, 1, call upon, invoke.
iō, interj., ah! oh!
ipse, -a, -um, intens. pron., self, very. (270.)
ira, -ae, f., anger, wrath; ire.
ir-rīdeō, 2, -rīsi, -risum [in], laugh at, ridicule; jest, mock.
is, ea, id, determ. pron., that; as pers. pron., he, she, it. (270.)
iste, -a, -ud, demon. pron., that (of yours). (275.)

Ita, adv., so, thus. Cf. sīc.
Italia, -ae, f., Italy.
Italus, -a, -um, adj., Italian.
ita-que, conj., and so, therefore. Cf. ergō and igitur.
item, adv. [ita], likewise, also. ITEM.
iter, itineris, n. [eō], way, road, march. (202.) ITINERANT.
iterum, adv., a second time, again. ITERATION.
Ithaca, -ae, f., Ithaca, an island in the Ionian Sea.
Itius, m., Itius, a port in Gaul.
jaccō, 2, -uī, — [jaciō]; (be thrown), lie.
jaciō, 3, jēcī, jactum [jaccō], throw, cast, hurl, fling.
jam, adv., already, now, at last. Cf. nunc.
jamjam, adv., already; jamjam ventūrus, on the point of coming.
jānua, -ae, f. [Jānus], door. Cf. porta.
Jānus, -i, m. [jānua], Janus, the two-faced god.
jējūnium, -i, n. [jējūnus], fast, hunger.
jējūnus, -a, -um [jejūnium], fasting, hungry, without food.
jocus, -i, m. (plur. joci and joca), joke, jest; per jocum, in jest, for a joke.
Jōhanniculus, -i, m., little John, Johnny, Jack.
jubeō, 2, jussī, jussum, bid, order, command. Cf. imperō.
jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant, agreeable.
jūdex, -icis, m. [jūdicō], judge. (106.)
jūdicium, -i, n. [jūdicō], judgment, opinion.
judicō, 1 [jūdēks], judge. (429.)
Jūlius, -i, m., Julia, a Roman
family name.
Jūpiter, Jovis, m., Jupiter, the
supreme deity of the Romans. (262.)
jūrō, 1 [jūs], swear, take an oath.
Jūrīs, Jūris, n., right, justice. (140.)
    Cf. fās.
Jūssus, -ūs, m. [jubeō], command, order.
Jūstē, adv. [jūtus], rightly, justly.
Jūvenis, -is, m. and f., youth, young person. Cf. adulēscēns.
Jūventūs, -ātis, f. [juvenis], the season of youth, youth.
Labienus, -i, m., Labienus, a lieutenant of Caesar's.
labor, m., -ōris, labor.
laborō, 1 [labor], work, toil.
labrum, -i, n., lip.
lac, lactis, n., milk. LACTEAL.
Lacedaemonii, -ōrum, m., the Lacedaemonians.
lacrīma, -ae, f., tear. LACRIMOSE.
lacus, -ūs, m., lake, pond.
Laevinus, -i, m., Laevinus, a Roman consul.
lapis, -idis, m., stone. LAPISTRY.
Latinē, adv. [Latinus], in Latin.
Latinus, -a, -um, adj. [Latium], Latin; noun, a Latin.
lātrō, 1, bark, bark at.
latrō, -ōnis, m., robber.
lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide.
    LATITUDE.
latus, -ōris, n., side. LATERAL.
laudō, 1 [laus], praise, laud.
laus, laudis, f. [laudō], praise, glory, fame.
lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, depute], ambassador, lieutenant. LEGATE.
legō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō], (a gathering), legion.
legō, 3, lēgī, lēctum, gather; select; read.
lēnis, -e, adj., soft, smooth, gentle.
lēnōs, -onis, m., lion. (134.)
lepus, -oris, m., hare.
levīs, -e, adj. [levō], light. (150.)
levō, 1 [levēs], lift up, raise, lighten.
lex, lēgis, f., law. LEGAL.
libenter, adv. [libet, it pleases], willingly, gladly; libenter videō, I am glad to see.
līber, -brī, m., book.
līber, -era, -erum, adj., free. LIBERAL. (71.)
Līber, -erī, m., Bacchus, god of wine.
lībere, adv. [līber], freely, fearlessly.
līberī, -ōrum, m. [līber], children. (60.)
līberō, 1 [līber], set free, free, liberate; w. abl. LIBERTAS, -ātis, f. [līber], freedom, liberty.
līcet, 2, licuit or licitum est, impers., it is permitted, (one) may.
lignēsus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum], of wood, wooden.
līgnum, -ī, n., wood; plur., sticks of wood.
līgo, -ōnis, m., mattock, hoe.
limīnum, -ī, n., lily.
lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language.
littera, -ae, f., letter (of the alphabet); plur., letter, epistle; literature.
litus, -ōris, n., shore, beach, bank.
locus, -i, m. (plur., loci and loca), place, position, spot. LOCAL.
longē, adv. [longus], far off; widely, greatly, much, by much.
longus, -a, -um, adj., long. LONGITUDE.
loquor, 3, locūtus, speak, talk.
lūctus, -ūs, m. [lūcō], mourning, lamentation.

lūcus, -ī, m. [lūcēō, shine], (open place in a wood), wood, grove.

lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum [lūdus], play. Interlude.

lūdus, -ī, m. [lūdō], game, play.

lūgēō, 2, lūxi, —, mourn, lament.

lūmen, -īnis, n. [lūcēō, lūx], light. Luminous.

lūna, -ae, f. [lūcēō, lūx], moon. Luna.

lupus, -ī, m., wolf.

luscinia, -ae, f., nightingale.

lūx, lūcis, f. [lūcēō, shine], light, daylight.

M., abbreviation of Marcus, a Roman first name.

mactē, adj. [voc. of mactus], be honored, be blessed; hail! well done! (p. 178, note 3.)

maculō, 1, stain.

magis, adv. [māg(nus)], more.

magister, -trī, m. [māg(nus)], master, teacher. Cf. praeceptor.

magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister], (the office of a magister), magistracy, magistrate.

māgnificus, -a, -um, adj. [māgnus, faciō], splendid, magnificent.

māgnitūdō, -īnis, f. [māgnus], greatness, size, magnitude.

māgnus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. mājor, superl. māximus), great, large.

mājor, -ōs, comp. of māgnus. Major.

male, adv. [malus], badly, ill. (219.)

mālä, mālle, mālūi, —, [magis, volō], be more willing, prefer, would rather. (316.)

malum, -ī, n., bad thing, evil.

māllum, -ī, n., apple.

malus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. pējor, sup. pessimus), bad, evil; baleful. (208.) Cf. improbus.

māne, adv., in the morning.

māneō, 2, mānsī, mānsum, stay, remain, await.

mānēs, ium, m., departed spirits, souls.

Maulius, -ī, m., Maulius, a Roman.

manus, -ūs, f., hand; force, band. (244, 1.) Manual.

Marcellus, -ī, m., Marcellus, a Roman general.

mare, -īs, n., sea. (149.) Marine.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mare], belonging to the sea, bordering on the sea, maritime.

Marius (C.), -ī, m., Gājus Marius, a famous Roman general.

Mārtius, -ī, m. [Mārs], March. Often as adj.

massa, -ae, f., mass.

māter, -trīs, f., mother. Maternal.

māteria, -ae, f. [māter], (mother-stuff), materials, timber.

mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], matron, wife, lady.

mātūrō, 1 [mātūrus, ripe], hasten.

māximē, adv. [māximus], most, especially, greatly. (219.)

māximus, -a, -um, superl. of māgnus. (208.)

medicus, -ī, m. [meedor, cure], physician. Medicine.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, adj. [medius, terra], midland, inland. Mediterranean.

medius, -a, -um, adj., middle; often to be translated midst.

Meldī, -ōrum, m., the Meldī, a people of Gaul.

melior, -ōs, comp. of bonus. (208.)
mellitus, -a, -um, adj. [mel, honey], honey-sweet, darling.
memor, -oris, adj., mindful. (150.)
Memorable.
memoria, -ae, f. [memor], memory.
mendacium, -i, n. [mendax], lying, falsehood.
mendax, -aeis, adj., [mentior], lying, deceitful.
mēns, mentis, f., mind, purpose.
(273.) Mental.
mēnsa, -ae, f., table.
mēnsis, -is, m., month.
mentor, 4 [mendax], lie, deceive.
Mercurius, -i, m., Mercury, messenger of the gods. (79.)
merēo, 2, be worthy of, deserve, meruer, 2 merit.
meridīanus, -a, -um, adj. [meridiea], of or belonging to midday, noon; meridian.
Metellus, -i, m., Metellus, a Roman general.
metuō, 3, -ui, -utum [metus], fear.
Cf. timeō.
metus, -uis, m. [meto], fear, dread.
Cf. timor.
meus, -a, -um, poss. pron. (voc. sing. mas. mi); my; mine.
migrō, 1, migrate.
miles, -itis, m., soldier. (105.) Military.
mille, num. adj., indecl. in sing.; in plur. millia, -ium, thousand.
(311, 6.)
Miltiades, -is, m., Miltiades, a Greek general.
Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, goddess of wisdom.
minime, adv. [minimus], least; no, by no means, far from it.
minister, -tri, m. [minus], (an inferior), servant. (66.) Minister.
Cf. magister.
minor, 1 [minae, threats], threaten.
minor, -us, comp. of parvus.
minus, adv. [minor], less.
mirabilis, -e, adj. [miror, wonder at], to be wondered at; wonderful, extraordinary.
misellus, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive of miser], poor little.
miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, unhappy, miserable.
miseret, 2, -itum est, impers. [miser], it makes miserable, it excites pity, (one) pitied; nos miseret, we pity. (415.)
miseria, -ae, f. [miser], wretchedness, misery.
Mithridates, -is, m., Mithridates, king of Pontus.
mittō, 3, misi, missum, send. Mission.
modestia, -ae, f. [modestus], modesty.
modius, -i, m. [modus], measure; peck.
modo, adv. [modus], only; modo ... modo, now ... now.
moles, -a, -um, adj. [molea, pile], troublesome. Molest.
molliō, 4 [mollis], soften. Mol-1
moneō, 2, -uí, -itum, remind, advice. warn. Monitor. (112.)
mōns, montis, m., mountain, hill.
Cf. collis.
monestrō, 1 [moneo], show, point out. Demonstrate.
monumentum, -i, n. [moneo], (that which reminds), memorial, monument.
mora, -ae, f., delay.
Morini, -orum, m., the Morini, a people of Gaul.
morior, 3, mortuus [mors], (fut. part. moriturus), die.
mōrorsus, -a, -um, adj. [mōs], fretful, cross; morose.

mortālis, -e, adj. [mors], (lia'le to death), mortal.

mortuus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of morior], dead.

mors, mortis, r. [morior], death.

mōs, mōris, m., manner, habit, custom. (140.) Moral.

mōtus, -ūs, m. [moveō], motion, movement; tumult, disturbance.

moveō, 2, movi, mōtum, move.

mox, adv., soon, presently.

mulier, -eris, r., woman.

multitūdō, -inis, r. [multus], multitude.

multum, adv. [multus], much.

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp. plús, superl. plúrimus, much, many.

mundus, -i, m., world, universe. Cf. vbis terrārum.

mōniō, 4 [moenia, fortifications], fortify, defend.

mōnitiō, -onis, r. [mōniō], fortification. Munition.

mūrus, -i, m., wall.

mūtō, 1, change, alter. Mutation.

nām, conj., for. Cf. enim.

nanciscor, 3, nactus and nactus, get, obtain; find, meet with.

nārrō, 1, tell, relate, report, narrate.

nāscor, 3, nātus, be born; be found.

Nāsica, -ae, m., Nasica, surname of one of the Scipios.

nāta, -ae, r. [P. of nāscor], daughter. Cf. filia.

nātūra, -ae, r. [nāscor], nature.

nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis], sailor.

nāvícula, -ae, r. [diminutive of nāvis], little vessel, boat. Cf. cymba.

nāvīgiō, -onis, r. [nāvīgō], a sailing; navigation.

nāvīgō, 1 [nāvis, agō], sail, set sail.

nāvis, -is, r., ship. (154.) Naval.

nē, conj., that not, lest; w. hortatory subjunctive, not.

ne, interrog. adv., enclitic. (p. 10, x. 2.) Cf. nōne and num.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [necessae], necessary.

necessitās, -ātis, r. [necessae], necessity, constraint.

necō, 1, kill, slay. Cf. interficiō and occīdō.

nectō, 3, nexū and nexī, nexum, bind, weave.

negō, 1 [nē, āō, say], say not, deny; refuse.

nēmō, -inis, m. and r. [nē, homo], no one. For gen. and abl. use nūllius, nūllō.

Neptūnus, -i, m., Neptune, god of the sea.

nē-quāquam, adv., by no means, not at all.

ne-que or nec, and not; neque ... neque, neither ... nor.

ne-sciō, 4, know not, be ignorant of.

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., neither (of two). (200.) Neutral.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., black. Cf. āter.

nihil, n., indecl., nothing.

nimium, adv., too, too much.

ni-si, conj., if not, unless, except.

nix, nivis, r., snow. (167, 2.)

nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō], well-known, famous; noble.

nōcēō, 2, -uī, -ītum, do harm to, hurt, injure; w. dat. Noxious. Cf. obsum.

noctū, adv. [nox], by night, in the night.
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, [nē, volō], be unwilling, will not, not wish. (316.)
nōmen, -inis, n. [nōscō], (that by which a thing is known), name. Nominal. (134.)
nōminō, 1 [nōmen], name, call.
nōn, adv. [nē, ĕnum], not.
nōn-ne, interrog. adv., expecting an affirmative answer, not? Cf. -ne and num.
nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (not none), some.
nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj. [novem], ninth.
nōscō, 3, nōvi, nōtum, learn, know. P. nōtus, -a, -um, as adj. known.
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., our, ours. Nostrī, our men.
novus, -a, -um, adj., new. Novelty.
nox, noctis, f., night. (167. 2.) Nocturnal.
nūbēs, -is, f., cloud. (149.)
nūllus, -a, -um, adj. [nē, ĕllus], not any, no, none. (200.) Nullity.
num, interrog. adv., expecting a negative answer, whether. Cf. nonne and -ne.
Numa, -ae, m., Numa (Pompilius), second king of Rome.
umerus, -ī, m., number.
umnums, -ī, m., piece of money, coin.
nunca, adv., now. Cf. jam.
nunquam, adv. [nē, unquam], never.
nūntiō, 1 [nūntius], announce, report.
nūntius, -ī, m. [nūntiō], bearer of news, messenger.
nusquam, adv. [nē, usquam], nowhere.
nūtrīō, 4, feed, nourish, support. Cf. alō.
ō, interj., O, Oh!
ob-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go to, reach, meet.
ob-ligō, 1 [ligō, bind], bind, oblige, put under obligation.
oblīvīscor, 3, oblītus, forget.
ob-rūō, 3, -ūi, -utum, overwhelm, cover, bury.
obses, -sidis, m. and f. [ob, sedēō], (one who sits or remains as a pledge), hostage.
obsideō, 2, -sēdī, -sēssum [sedeō], (sit against), blockade, besiege. Cf. oppūgnō.
obsistō, 3, -stītī, -stītum, oppose, withstand, obstruct; w. dat.
ob-sūm, esse, -fui, —, be against, opposed t; injure; w. dat. Cf. nocēō.
ob-temperō, 1, comply with, yield to; w. dat.
obotiam, adv., in the way, towards; with verb of motion, meet; w. dat.
occāsus, -ās, m. [occidō], (a sinking), setting.
occiādō, 3, -cīdi, -cāsum [ob, cadēō], fall down, fall.
occiādō, 3, -cīdi, -cāsum [ob, caedēō, cut], cut down, kill. Cf. necō and interficiō.
occupō, 1 [ob, capiō], take possession of, seize; occupy. Cf. potior.
oc-currō, 3, -currī, -cursum [ob], run to meet; meet, fall in with. Occur.
ōceānus, -ō, m., ocean.
ocellus, -ī, m. [diminutive of occlusus], little eye.
octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj. [octō], eighth.
octō, num. adj., indecl., eight.
oculus, -i, m., eye. Ocular.
of-ferō, offere, obtuli, oblātum [ob], (bring before), present, offer. (321.)
officium, -i, n. [opus, faciō], service, duty, office.
ōlim, adv. [olle, old form of ille], (at that time); formerly, once; at some time or other; hereafter. Cf. aliquandō and quondam.
ōmnis, -e, adj., whole, all, every. Cf. tōtus.
onus, -eris, n., load, burden. Onerous.
opus, -ae, r. [opus], labor, care, attention; operam dare, try; operāre, on account of. Operate.
opportet, 2, -uit, impers. [opus], it is necessary, it behooves; (one) must or ought.
oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum], of a town; noun, townsman.
oppidum, -i, n., town.
op-pleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum [ob], fill up; cover.
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, convenient, suitable; opportune.
op-pūgnō, 1 [ob], attack, assault, besiege. Cf. expugnō and obsideō.
[ops], opis, r., aid, assistance; plur., power, strength, resources.
optimē, adv. [optimus], most excellently, best. (219.)
opūō, 1, wish, desire, long for. Cf. cupiō and désiderō.
opus, -eris, n., work, labor (140); as indecl. noun, need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary.
ōrāculum, -i, n. [ōrō], oracle.
ōrātiōn, -onis, r. [ōrō], prayer, plea; speech, oration.
ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō], orator, ambassador.
orbis, -is, m., circle, orb; orbis ter-
rārum, earth, world. (154.)
orbus, -a, -um, adj., bereaved, childless.
Orcus, -i, m., Orcus, the lower world; also Pluto, the god of the lower world.
ordior, 4, orsus, begin, undertake. Cf. incipio.
ōrdō, -onis, m., row, rank; order, arrangement.
orlēns, -entis, m. [P. of orlō], rising; east.
orlō, 4, ortus (pres. ind. of conj. 3, orēris, orītur; imp. subj. orīrēr or orīrēr; fut. part. orītūrus), rise, appear; begin.
ōrnamēntum, -i, n. [ōrnom], (that which adorns), ornament, jewel.
ōrnō, 1, adorn, ornament.
ōros, 1 [ôs], pray, beg. Cf. petō and rogō.
ōs, ēris, n., mouth, face. Oral.
ös-tendō, 3, -di, -tendum [ob(ū)], (stretch out before), show, display.
ōstium, -i, n. [ōs], entrance, door.
ōvis, -is, r., sheep.
ōvum, -i, n., egg. Oval.
pābulum, -i, n. [pāsco], food, fodder. Cf. cibus.
pæne, adv., nearly, almost. Cf. fērū.
pænitentia, -ae, r. [paenićō], repentance, penitence. Penitentiary.
palūs, -ādis, r., swamp, marsh.
pār, paris, adj., equal.
pārātus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of parō], ready, prepared.
pārcō, 3, perpęrcē (parsī), parsusum, spare; w. dat.
pārens, -entis, m. and r., parent. (167, 1.)
päreō, 2, -ui, ——, (come forth, appear), be obedient to, obey; w. dat.
pariō, 3, peperi, paritum and partum, bring forth, lay.
pariter, adv. [pär], equally.
parō, 1, make ready, prepare, get.
pars, partis, f., part, piece, portion, share.
partior, 4 [pars], divide; part, share.
Parus, -i, v., Paros, an island in the Ægean Sea. (11. 4.)
parvus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. minor, superl. minimus), small, little.
pāscō, 3, pāvi, pāstum, feed, tend; pasture.
passer, -eris, m., sparrow.
passus, -ūs, m. [pateō], (a stretching out of the feet in walking), step, pace.
pāstor, -ōris, m. [pāsco], feeder, keeper; shepherd. (134.) Pastōr.
pateō, 2, -ui, ——, lie open, be open.
P. patēns, open.
pater, -eris, m., father. (134.) Pater.
patienter, adv. [patiēns], patiently, with patience.
patio, 3, passus, bear, suffer, endure. Passion.
patria, -ae, f. [patrius, pater; sc. terra], fatherland, native land, country. Expatriate.
pauca, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), few, little. Paucity.
paulō, adv. [paulus], by a little, little.
paulus, -a, -um, adj., little.
Paulus, -i, m., surname of Æmilius.
apauper, -eris, adj., poor. (167. 3.)
pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), peace. Pacify.
peccātum, -i, n. [peccō], mistake, fault, sin.
peccō, 1, make a mistake, commit a fault, sin.
pectus, -oris, n., breast.
pecus, -oris, n., cattle, herd.
pedes, -itis, m. [pēs], foot-soldier.
pējor, -us, comp. of malus. (208.)
pellis, -is, v., skin, hide. Pelt.
pēnum, -i, n. [P. of penō], (what is weighed out, e.g. wool, as a task for spinning), task; lesson, exercise.
per, prep. w. acc., through, by, by means of, on account of.
pēra, -ae, f., bag, wallet.
per-agrō, 1 [ager], wander through, pass over, traverse.
per-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum, destroy; lose. Cf. amittō.
per-dūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, lead or bring through.
per-eō, -ire, -ī, ——, perish, be ruined. (327.)
per-fodiō, 3, -fōdi, -fossum, dig through, pierce, stab.
per-fringō, 3, -frēgī, -fractum, [frango], break through, break.
per-fugō, 3, -fugi, ——, flee (for refuge).
pergō, 3, perrūxi, perrēctum [per, regō], go on, continue.
periculum, -i, n. [perior, try], trial, attempt; risk, danger, peril.
peritus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of perior, try], (having tried), skilful.
per-mittō, 3, -misi, -mismum, allow, grant, suffer, permit. Cf. sinō.
per-paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), very few.
Persae, -ārum, m., the Persians.
per-señor, 3, -cūtus, follow persistently, follow up.
per-spiciō, 3, -spēxi, -spectum, [speciō], see through, see into; perceive, observe. Perspective.
per-stō, 1, -stiti, -stātum, stand fast, persevere, persist.

per-terreō, 2, -ui, -itum, thoroughly frighten.

pertinācīa, -ae, f. [pertināx], perseverance; obstinacy. Pertinacity.

per-veniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum (come through to the end), arrive. Cf. advenīō.

pēs, pedis, m., foot. (105.) Pedal.

petō, 3, -ivi or -ii, -itum, seek, demand, beg. Petition. Cf. őrō and rogō.

Philotimus, ī, m., Philotimus.

piger, -gra, -grum, adj., slow, lazy, indolent.

piget, 2, -uit or -itum est, impersonal, it disgusts, (one) is disgusted. (416.)

pigritia, -ae, f. [piger], laziness, sloth, indolence.

pilum, -ī, n., javelin.

pīpiō, 1, chirp.

placcō, 2, -ui, -itum [placidus], please; w. dat.

placidē, adv. [placidus], softly, gently, quietly. Placidly.

placidus, -a, -um, adj. [placcō], gentle, quiet, calm. Placid.

plānitiēs, -ī, f. [plānus, even, level], (a flatness), level ground, plain.

plānus, -a, -um, adj. [plānitiēs], even, flat, level, plain.

Plataēnīsēs, -īum, m., the Plataeans, inhabitants of Plataea.

plēbs, plēbis, f., the common people, multitude. Plebeian.

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [plēō, fill], full.

plērusque, -aque, -unque, adj. (generally plur.), very many, most, the greater part.

plumbum, -ī, n., lead; plumbum album, tin.

plūs, plūris, adj., comp. of multus. (208.)

Plūtō, -onis, Pluto, m., god of the lower world.

pōculum, -ī, n., cup, bowl.

poēma, -atis, n., poem.

poena, -ae, f. [pūniō], quit-money, fine, punishment. Penal.

Poeni, -ūrum, m., the Carthaginians.

Poenicīcus, -a, -um, adj. [Poeni], Carthaginian. See Punicus.

poēta, -ae, m., poet.

polliceror, 2, promise. Cf. prōmītō.

Polyphemus, ī, m., Polyphemus, a Cyclops.

Pompēius, -ōs, m., Pompey, a famous Roman general.

pōnum, -ī, n., fruit.

pondus, -eris, n. [pendō, weigh], weight.

pōnō, 3, posui, positum, put, place, set. Position.

pōns, -ntis, m., bridge.

Popēdius, -ī, m., Popedius, a Latin.

populus, ī, m., people.

Porcīus, -ī, m., a Roman family name.

Porsona, -ae, m., Porsona, an Etruscan king.

porta, -ae, f., gate, door. Portal. Cf. jānua.

portō, 1, carry, bring. Cf. ferō and vehō.

porticus, -ūs, f. [porta], portico.

portus, -ūs, m., harbor, port. (247.)

possēm, possē, potui, — [potis, able, sum], be able, can. (292.)

post, prep. w. acc., after, behind; as adv., for posteā, afterwards after.

post-eā, adv., afterwards.
posterus, -a, -um, adj. [post] (comp. posterior, superl. postér-nus or postumus), following, next.
post-háce, adv. after this time, hereafter, henceforth.
postrídīē, adv. [postero diē], on the day after, the following day.
postulō, 1, ask, demand. Cf. quaē-rō and rogō.
potēns, -entis, adj. [P. of possum], able, powerful; potent.
potior, 4 [potis, able], become master of, get, get possession of; w. gen. or abl. Cf. adipiscor.
prefbēō, 2 [praebē, habēō], hold forth, offer, furnish.
preficeps, -ipitis, adj. [praeciput], head-foremost, headlong; rash, precipitate.
prefectōr, -ōris, m. [praecpectrum], teacher, preceptor. Cf. magister.
prefectum, -i, n. [praecpector], maxim, precept.
predēta, -ae, f., booty, spoil, prey.
Predatory.
predicō, 1 [praed, dicō, -āre, make known]; proclaim, boast.
pred-ēō, -ēre, -i, -itum, go before; be at the head. (327. 2.)
predium, -i, n., reward, prize. Premium.
prediēdium, -i, n. [praede, sedeō, sit before], defence, help; troops, garrison.
predāns, -antis, adj. [P. of prae-stand], pre-eminent, distinguished.
predīō, 1, stīfī, -stītum (stātum), stand before; surpass; fulfill, discharge, perform.
predīsum, -esse, -fui, ---, be before, at the head of, command; w. dat.
predīter, prep. w. acc., beyond, besides, except.
predūrē-o, -ire, -i, -itum, go by, pass by, omit. (327. 2.) Pret-end.
predōrīus, -a, -um, adj. [praedor], (pertaining to a praedor), præ dor-ian; noun, ex-praedor.
predātum, -i, n., meadow.
premō, 3, pressī, pressum, press; with ὥρα, bite, eat.
[prex], precise, f. (used mostly in plur.), prayer, entreaty.
primus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. with comp. prior, no pos.], first, foremost. Prime.
princeps, -ipitis, adj. [prīmus, capīō], (taking the first place), first, chief; noun, chief, leader. (105.) Prince.
prīus-quān, conj., before that, before.
privō, 1, deprive; w. abl.
prō, interj., O!
prō, prep. w. abl., before, in behalf of, for; considering.
prō-cēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum, go forward, advance, proceed. Cf. prō-gredior.
prōcul, adv., far, far from.
prō-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, give forth; hand down; give up, betray.
prō-dūcō, 3, -duξī, -ductum, lead forth.
prōcelium, -i, n., battle, combat. Cf. pāgna.
proficiscor, 3, -fectus, set out, march, go. Cf. exigō and egradiō.
pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus [fateor], acknowledge, confess, declare. Pro-fess.
prō-fligō, 1, overthrow, destroy, ruin. Profligate.
profundus, -a, -um, adj., deep, profound.
prō-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior.
pro-hibeō

step], go forward, advance. Progress. Cf. procédō.

pro-hibeō, 2 [habeō], (hold in front of), hold back; check, hinder, prevent, prohibit.

prō-iciō, 3, -iēci, -iectum [iaciō], throw forward, cast away, cast. Project.

prō-mittō, 3, -misi, -missum [let or send forth], promise; let grow. Cf. polliceo.

prope, prep. w. acc., and adv. (comp. propius, superl. proximē), near, near to; nearly, almost.

prō-pōnō, 3, -pōsuī, -positum, put before, set forth; make known, declare. Propose.

prōpositum, -i, n. [prōpōnō], purpose, design, resolution. Proposition.

proprium, -a, -um, adj., (one’s) own. Proper.

prō-pūgnō, 1 (fight in front), rush out to battle, make sorties.

prō-sequor, 3, -cūtus, follow, pursue. Prosecute.

Prōserpina, -ae, r., Proserpina, daughter of Ceres.

prō-sterēnō, 3, -strāvi, -stratum, overthrow, destroy; prostrate.

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfūi, ——, be useful to, benefit; w. dat. (293.)

prō-vehō, 3, - vexēi, -vectum, carry forward, convey; in pass., ride, sail.

prō-videō, 2, -vidi, -visum, (see forward), provide.

prōvīncia, -ae, r., province.

proximus, -a, -um (superl. with comp. propior, no pos.), nearest, next. Proximity.

prūdens, -entis, adj. [for prōvidēns], wise, sagacious, knowing, prudent. (164.)

prūdenter, adv. [prūdēns], wisely, prudently.

prudentia, -ae, r. [prūdēns], foresight, sagacity, wisdom, prudence.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus], (pertaining to the people), public.

Pūlius, -i, m., Publius, a Roman first name.

pudet, 2, puduit or puditum est, impers., it shames, (one) is ashamed.

puella, -ae, r. [diminutive of puer], girl, maiden.

puellāris, -e, adj. [puella], girlish.

puer, -erī, m., boy, child. Puerile.

puerulus, -i, m. [diminutive of puer], little boy.

pūgnā, -ae, r. [pūgnō], battle, contest. Pugnacious. Cf. proelium.

pūgnō, 1 [pūgnā], fight. Cf. dimicō.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful, fair, comely.

pulchritūdō, -inis, r. [pulcher], beauty.

pulvis, -eris, m., dust. Pulverize.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. [Poenī], Carthaginian, Punic; mālum Pūnicum, pomegranate. See Pocnicus.

pūniō, 4 [poena], punish.

putō, 1, think, believe, reckon. (429.)

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., Pyrenean, Pyrenees.

Pyrrhus, -i, m., Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.

quadrāginta, num. adj., indecl. [quattuor], forty.

quadringenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. [quattuor, centum], four hundred.

quaeō, 3, quaesīvi or -īi, quaesitum, seek, ask, inquire. (382.)

quaesō, 3, -ivi, or -īi, —— [old form of quaerō], beg, pray.
quam, adv.; interrog., how, how much? rel., as much, as, than; quam saepissimē, as often as possible.
quantus, -a, -um, adj. [quam], how great, how much; as great as, as much as.
quā-rē, adv. (on account of which thing), wherefore.
quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj. [quattuor], fourth. Quart.
qua-si, adv., as if.
quater, num. adv. [quattuor], four times.
quattuor, num. adj., indecl., four.
quattuor-decinum, num. adj. [de-
-cem], fourteen.
-que, conj. enclitic, and. Cf. et, atque, and ēc.
quercus, -ūs, r., oak. (11. 4.)
qui, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron., who, which, what, that. (279.)
quia, conj., because. Cf. quod.
quidam, quaedam, quid(quod)-
dam, indef. pron., certain, a cer-
tain one, a. (279. 4.)
quidem, adv. (never the first word), indeed, certainly, in truth; né ... quidem, not even.
quīn, conj. [quī, nē], but that, that.
quingenti, -āē, -a, num. adj., indecl.
[quinque, centum], five hundred.
quīnquā-gintā, num. adj., indecl.
[quinque], fifty.
quīnque, num. adj., indecl., five.
quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj. [quin-
que], fifth.
quīntus decimus, num. adj., fif-
teenth.
quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., who? which? what? (279.)
quisquam, quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron., any, any one (at all). (279. 4.)
quisque, quaeque, quid(quod)que,
rēgnō, 1 [rēgnōm, rēx], be king; rule, reign.

rēgnōm, -i, n. [rēx], kingdom.

rego, 3, rēxī, rēctum [rēx], rule.

Rēgulus, -ī, m., Regulus, a Roman consul.

re-īciō, 3, -jēci, -iectum [iaciō], throw back, drive back. Reject.

re-linquo, 3, -liquī, -lictum [reliquus], leave behind, leave. Relinquish.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [relinquō], remaining, the rest.

re-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, send back. Remit.

rēmus, -ī, m., ear.

Remus, -ī, m., Remus, twin brother of Romulus.

re-pellō, 3, repullī, repulsum, drive back, repel, repulse.

re-perīō, 4, repercī, repertum [parīō, procure], find, discover, ascertain. Cf. inveniō.

re-petō, 3, -petīvī or -ī, -petītum, seek again, demand back; rēs repetō, demand restitution.

re-plēō, 2, -ōvi, -ētum, (fill again), fill up, fill. Replete.

re-portō, 1, bring back, carry back. Cf. referō.

re-prehendō, 3, -dī, -hēnsum, hold back, restrain, reprove. Reprehensive.

re-putō, 1, (count over), reckon; think over.

rēs, reī, r., thing, event, circumstance, affair (254); rēs publica, república, state, commonwealth.

re-scindō, 3, -scidi, -scissum, tear away, break down. Rescind.

re-spondeō, 2, -dī, -spōnsum, (promise in return), answer, reply, respond.

re-stituō, 3, -ui, -ūtum [statuō], replace; give back, return, restore. Restitution.

re-stō, 1, restī, —, stop behind, stand still, remain.

re-tineō, 2, -tīnuī, -tentum [teneō], hold back, restrain, retain.

re-vertor, 3, -tī, -sum (deponent in pres. imp. and fut.), turn back, return. Revert.

re-vocō, 1, call back, recall.

rēx, rēgis, m. [rego], (ruler), king. (105.)

Rhēa Silvia, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine.

Rhodus, -ī, f., Rhodes, an island in the Ægean Sea.

rīctus, -ūs, m. [ringor, open the mouth], jaws wide open; jaws.


rīsus, -ūs, m. [rīdeo], laughter.

rivus, -ī, m., brook, stream. Rival.

rōbur, -oris, n., strength.

rogō, 1, ask, question. Cf. interrogō. (382.)

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma], Roman; noun, a Roman.

Rōmulus, -ī, m., Romulus, first king of Rome.

rosa, -ae, f., rose.

rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, gnaw], beak of a vessel. Rostrum.

rubeō, 2 [rubēr], be red.

ruber, -bra, -brum, adj. [rubeō], red. Ruby.

ruina, -ae, f. [ruō, fall], (a falling down), downfall, disaster, ruin.

rūpēs, -īs, f. [ru(m)pō, break], (the broken thing) cliff, rock.

rūrsus, adv. [re-versus, revertō], (turned back), back, again.

rūs, rūris, n., the country. (336.)
rūsticus, -ī, m. [rūs], countryman, peasant. Rustic.
semper, adv., always, ever.

sacer, -era, -crum, adj., sacred.
sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [semper], everlasting.
saepe, adv., often, frequently.

senātor, -ōris, m. [senex], senator.

sagitta, -ae, f., arrow.
senātus, -ūs, m. [senex], council of elders, senate.

Saguntum, -i, n., Saguntum, a town in Spain.

Sallustius, -i, m., Sallust, a Roman historian.

Salutary.

Samnīs, -ītis, m., a Samnite.

sanguis, -inis, m., blood. Sanguinary. Cf. cruor.

sensus, -ūnus, m. [sensō], feeling, sense, perception.

salīus, -ūtis, f., safety, welfare.

salūs, salutary.

sensī, -is, prp. [sensī, be sensible], wise, sensible.

senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex], old age.

senex, -onis, adj., old; noun, old man. (262.) Seneile.

senior, -ōris, adj. [comp. of senex], elder, old person.

Sēatus, -sūrus, n. [sētus], seat, abode.

sexagesima, -a, -um, adj. [sexagesimā], sixty. (60.)

sexstā, -ārum, n. [sexstā], sixties.
sī, conj., if, whether.
sic, adv., so, thus, in this manner.
Cf. ita.
Sicca, -ae, m., Sicca, a friend of Cicero.
Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily.
sidus, -eris, n., star, constellation.
SIDEBAL. (301.)
signum, -ī, n., mark, sign, signal.
silva, -ae, f., wood, forest. SILVAN.
similis, -e, adj. [simul], like, resembling, similar. (207.)
simplex, -icis, adj., simple, plain, artless.
simul, adv. [similis], at the same time.
sin, conj. [si-nē], but if, however, if.
sine, prep. w. abl., without.
singuli, -ae, -a, num. adj., separate, single, one by one. (311. 8.)
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left (hand). SINISTER.
sinō, 3, sīvi, situm, allow, permit. Cf. permittō.
sinus, -ūs, m., bosom, lap, folds of a garment.
sitis, -is, f. (acc. -im, abl. -i), thirst.
socer, -erī, m., father-in-law.
socius, -ī, m., ally, companion. ASSOCIATE.
Socratēs, -is, m., Socrates, a famous Greek philosopher.
sōl, sōlis, m., sun (no gen. plur.). SOLAR.
soleō, 2, solitus, be accustomed, wont. (p. 177, note 2.)
Solōn, -ōnis, m., Solon, the great law-giver of Athens.
sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, single; sole. (200.)
solvō, 3, solvi, solūtum, loose, loosen; break; weigh anchor, set sail. SOLVE.
somnus, -ī, m., sleep.
soror, -ōris, f., sister.
sors, -tis, r., lot, condition. SORT.
sortior, 4 [sors], draw lots, obtain by lot.
spargō, 3, -sī, -sum, strewn, scatter. SPARSE.
Spartaeus, -ī, m., Spartacus, a gladiator.
spatium, -ī, n., room, space; period.
spectō, 1 [speciō, look], look at, behold, witness. SPECTACLE.
speculor, 1, spy out, watch.
specus, -ūs, m., cave, den.
spērō, 1 [spēs], hope, hope for.
spēs, speī, f. [spērō], hope, expectation.
spoliō, 1, rob, plunder, spoil, despoil.
statim : adv. [stō], (standing there), on the spot, immediately, at once.
statua, -ae, f. [statūa], (the thing set up), statue.
statūa, 3, -ūm, -utum, put, place; determine, think, believe.
stella, -ae, f., star. (301.) STELLAR.
stō, 1, steti, statum, stand.
strāgēs, -is, f., slaughter, carnage.
stringō, 3, -nīxī, strictum (draw tight), graze; draw, unshod.
studeō, 2, -uī, —— [studium], be eager, strive earnestly for; study; w. dat. STUDIUM, -ī, n. [studeō], zeal, eagerness; study.
stultitia, -ae, f. [stultus], folly.
stultus, -a, -um, adj., foolish, silly.
suāvis, -e, adj., sweet, delightful. Cf. dulcis. SUAVITY.
suāvitās, adv. [suāvis], sweetly, delightfully.
sub-dūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, draw from under, draw up.
subeō, -ire, -ī, -itum, go under or up to, enter; undergo. (327.)
subitō, adv. [subeō], suddenly, unexpectedly.

sub-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum (move from beneath), remove, drive away.

subsidium, -ī, n. [subsideō], aid, support, relief; assistance.

sub-sillō, 4, -uil, — [salliō, leap], jump up. Cf. désiliō and trànsiliō.

sub-veniō, 4, -vēniī, -ventum (come to one’s relief), help, aid, assist. Cf. succurrō.

suc-currō, 3, -currī, -cursum [sub], (run up to), help, aid, succor.

sufferē, sufferre, sustuli, sublātum [sub], bear up under, undergo. Suffer.

suiē, reflex. pron., of himself (herself; itself; themselves). (204.)

Sulla, -ae, m., Sulla, a famous Roman general and statesman.

sum, esse, fiū, ——, be, exist. (72.)

summus, -a, -um, adv., superl. of superus, highest.

sūmō, 3, sūmpsi, sūmp tum, take, take up; assume.

super, prep. w. acc. and abl., over, above, on top of.

superbē, adv. [superbus], proudly, haughtily.

superbus, -a, -um, adj. [super], proud. Superb.

superior, -us, adj., comp. of superus, higher, superior.

superō, 1 [super], pass over; surpass, overcome; conquer. (186.)

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, remain over; survive, exist.

suprēmus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of superus, highest; last.

suscipiō, 3, -cēpiī, -ceptum [sub, capiō], undertake.

sus-pendo, 3 -di, -pēn sum [sub], hang up, suspend, hang.

suspecor, 1 [suspicīō, look askance at], mistrust, suspect.

sustineō, 2, -tinui, -tentum [sub, teneō], hold up, bear, endure; sustain.

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron. [sūī], his, hers, her, its, theirs, their (own).

taceō, 2, tacuī, tacitum, be silent, be silent about. Tacit.

taedet, 2, taeduit, taesum est, impers., it disgusts, wearies; (one) is disgusted, wearied. (416.)

tāleā, -ac, r., thin bar.

tam, adv., so; tam... quam, as... as. Cf. ita and sic.

tamen, adv., yet, but, nevertheless.

tandem, adv. [tam], (just so far), at length, finally.

tangō, 3, tēgī, tactum, touch.

tantō, adv. [tantus], by so much, so much the (with comparatives).

tantum, adv. [tantis], only.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great.

Tarentinus, -a, -um, adj., of Tarrentium, Tarentine.

Tarquinius, -ī, m., Tarquin the Proud, seventh king of Rome.

tectum, -ī, n. [tegō, cover], covering, shelter, roof.

tēlum, -ī, n., weapon.

temerārius, -a, -um [temerē], rash, inconsiderate.

temerē, adv., rashly, inconsiderately.

temeritās, -ātis, r. [temerē], chance; rashness, temerity.

tempestās, -ātis, r. [tempus], (state or condition of time), weather; stormy weather, storm, tempest.

templum, -ī, n., temple.

tempus, -oris, n., time. Temporal.

tenebrae, -ārum, r., darkness, shades.
tenebricōsus, -a, -um, adj. [tenebrae], (full of darkness), dark, gloomy.
teneō, 2, -uī, tentum, hold, keep, have; memoriam tenēre, remember.
tener, -era, -erum, adj., soft, delicate, tender.
tenuis, -e, adj., thin, light.
ter, num. adv. [trēs], thrice, three times.
Tereutius, -i, m., a Roman family name.
tergum, -i, n., back.
terra, -ae, f., earth, land. Terrace.
terreō, 2 [terror], frighten, alarm, terrify.
terror, -ōris [terreō], terror, alarm.
tertiō, adv. [tertius], the third time.
tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], third.
tertius decimus, num. adj., thirteenth.
testimōnium, -i, n. [testor, bear witness], witness, evidence, testimony.
testādū, -inis, v. [testa, shell], tortoise; shed or covering to protect besiegers.
Teutonēs, -um, m., the Teutons, a German tribe.
Thalēs, -is, m., Thales, a Greek philosopher.
Themistoclēs, -is, m., Themistocles, a famous Athenian.
Ticīnus, -ī, m., the Ticinus, a river of Italy.
tigris, -is, or -idis, tiger.
timeō, 2, -uī, — [timor], fear, be afraid of.
Timoleōn, -ontis, m., Timoleon, a Corinthian general.
timor, -ōris, m. [timeō], fear, dread, alarm. Timorous.
tolerō, 1, bear, endure. Tolerate.
tollō, 3, sustuli, sublātum, lift, raise, pick up; weigh (anchor).
tot, adj., indecl., so many. Cf. quot.
tōtus, -a, -um, adj., whole, all, entire.
(200.) Total.
tractō, 1 [trahō], handle, manage, treat.
trā-dō, 3, -dī, -ditum [trāns], give over, deliver; relate, recount. Tradition.
trahō, 3, traxī, -ctum, draw, drag; derive.
trā-icīō, 3, -jęciō, -jectum [trāns, jaciō], throw across; pass over, cross.
trājectus, -ūs, m. [trāiciō], a crossing over, passage.
tranquillītas, -ātis, f. [tranquillus], calmness, tranquillity; a calm.
trāns, prep. w. acc., across, beyond, over.
trān-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsum [scandō, climb], step or pass over; cross. Transcend.
trāns-eō, -ere, -ii, -itum, go over, cross. (372.)
trāns-fīgō, 3, -fixī, -fixum, pierce through, pierce, stab; transfix.
trān-siliō, 4, -ii, and -ui, — [salīō, leap], leap over or across. Cf. dēsiliō and subsiliō.
trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [trēs, centum], three hundred.
tredecim, num. adj., indecl. [trēs, decem], thirteen.
trēs, tria, num. adj., three. (311. 4.)
tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune.
trigintā, num. adj., indecl. [trēs], thirty.
trippātītō, adv. [trēs, partior], in three divisions.
trīstis, -e, adj., sad, gloomy.
triumphus, -i, triumph.
tū, pers. pron., thou. (264.)
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet. (14.)
tueor, 2, tuitus, and tūtus, look at; watch, defend, guard. Cf. defendō.
Tullia, -ae, f., Tullia, Cicero’s daughter.
tum, adv., at that time, then.
tunc, adv. [tum], at that time, then.
turgidulus, -a, -um, adj., swole. Turgid.
turpis, -e, adj., ugly, foul; base, disgraceful, shameful.
turpiter, adv. [turpis], foully, basely, shamefully.
turpitūdō, -inis, f. [turpis], ugliness, baseness.
turris, -is, f., tower. (149.)
tūtus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of tueor], safe.
tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., thy, thine; your, yours (of only one).
tyraannus, -ī, m., tyrant.

ubi, adv., where, when.
ūllus, -a, -um, adj. [for anūlus, diminutive of unus], any, any one. (200.)
ūlterior, -us, adj., comp. (no positive), further.
ūltimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of ulterior), furthest, last. Ultimate.
ūmerus, -i, m., shoulder.
unde, adv., whence.
undi-que, adv., from all parts, on all sides, everywhere.
ūnī-versus, -a, -um, adj., (turned into one), all together.
unquam, adv., at any time, ever.
ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj., one; alone. (200, 311, 3.)

urbs, -is, f., city. (163.) Suburbs.
urgeō, 2, ursi, ——, press, drive, impel, urge.
usque, adv., all the time, continually.
ut or uti, adv. and conj., how, as; that, in order that, so that.
uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron., which of two. (200.)
uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron., each of two, both. (200.)
ūtīlis, -e, adj. [ūtōr], useful, advantageous.
ūtīnam, adv., would that, 0 that, I wish that.
ūtōr, 3, ūsus, use, employ; w. abl. utrum, adv., whether; used chiefly in double questions.
ūva, -ae, f., grape, bunch of grapes.
uxor, -ōris, f., wife. Cf. conjunct.
vagor, 1, go to and fro, wander. Vagrant.
valēō, 2, -ūi, -itum, be strong or well; valēō, farewell, good by. Cf. convalescō.
valētūdō, -inis, f. [valēō], state of health, health.
validus, -a, -um, adj. [valēō], strong, stout, sturdy. Valid.
vallis (or vallēs), -is, f., valley, vale.
varius, -a, -um, adj., different, changeable, various.
Varro, -ōnis, m., Varro, a Roman consul.
vastō, 1 [vastus, waste, desolate], lay waste, ravage.
vehō, 3, vexi, vectum, carry, draw, convey; pass., ride, sail.
vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, fleet, quick. (179.) Velocity.
vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnōr, hunt], hunter.
venēnum, -i, n., poison. VENOM.
venia, -ae, f., indulgence, mercy, kindness. VENIAL.
veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum, come.
ventus, -ī, m., wind.
Venus, -eris, f., Venus, goddess of love.
Venusia, -ae, f., Venusia, a town in Apulia.
venustus, -a, -um, adj. [Venus], lovely, charming.
ver, vēris, n., spring. VERNAL.
verbūm, -ī, n., word. VERB.
verecor, 2, reverence, respect, fear.
vērō, adv. and conj. [vērus], in truth, in fact, but in fact.
verum, -i, n. [vērus], the truth.
vērus, -a, -um, adj., true, real.
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. your, yours (of more than one).
veterrimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of vetus.
vestiō, 4 [vestis, garment], clothe.
veto, 1, -uī, -itum, forbid, prevent.
VETO.
vetus, -eris, adj. (comp. vetustior, superl. veterrimus), old. (141,208.)
vētustior, -us, adj., comp. of vetus.
via, -ae, r., way, road, street.
vice, -ae, m., village.
vīdeo, 2, vidi, visum, see, perceive; pass., be seen, seem. VISION.
vigil, adj. [vīgō, be lively], watchful. (151. 4.) VIGILANT.
vigilia, -ae, f. [vīgillō, vigil], a watching, watch, i.e., the fourth part of the night.
vigillō, 1 [vigil], watch.
vigintī, num. adj., indecl., twenty.
vinciō, 4, vinixī, vincetum, bind.
vincē, 3, vici, victum, conquer, de feat. (186.)
vindicō, 1, claim; avenge, punish. VINDICATE.
vimum, -ī, n., wine.
viola, -ae, f., violet.
vir, virī, m., man, hero. (138, 262.)
virgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin.
virtūs, -ūtis, f. [vir], (manliness), courage, bravery; VIRTUE.
vis, vīs, f. (gen. and dat., rare), strength, power. (262.)
vita, -ae [vīvō], life. VITAL.
vīnis, -is, f. [vīcū, twist together], vine.
vitium, -ī, n. [vītis], (a moral twist), fault, blemish, VICE. Cf. culpa.
vitō, 1, avoid, shun.
vitrum, -ī, n., wood, a dye.
vituperō, 1, blame, censure. VITUPERATION. Cf. culpō.
vivō, 3, vivī, victum [vīvus], live. (194.)
vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [vivō], alive, living.
vix, adv., hardly, with difficulty.
volō, velle, volū, ——, wish, be willing, desire, intend. (316, 319.)
voluptās, -ātis, f., pleasure, enjoyment.
vōx, vōcis, f. [vocō, call], voice.
vulnerō, 1 [vulnus], wound, hurt, injure. VULNERABLE.
vulnus, -eris, n. [vulnerō], wound.
vulpēs, -is, m., fox.
vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, looks, features.
Zama, -ae, f., Zama, a town in Africa.
ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY.

a

able (be), possum (202).
about, dé, w. abl.
absent (be), absum (297).
accept, accipió, 3.
accompany, comítor, 1.
accord (own), ipse, -a, -um (270. 0).
accuse, accúso, 1.
across, tráns, w. acc.
act, agó, 3.
admire, admiror, 1.
admonish, meneó, 2 (112).
adorn, ornó, 1.
advance, prósèdó, 3; prógradior, 3.
advice, consílium, -i, n.
advice, meneó, 2 (112).
afar, longé.
affair, rés, ref, r. (254.)
afraid (be), metuó, 3; timeó, 2.
Africa, África, -ae, r.
after, post, w. acc.; cum, w. subj.; postquam, w. ind.
afterwards, posteá, deinde.
again, iterum, rúrsus.
against, adversus, contrá, in, w. acc.
age (old), senectús, -útis, r.
agriculture, agrí cultura, -ae, r.
aid, auxílium, -i, n.
air, àer, ãerîs, m.
Alexander, Alexander, -drî, m.
alive, vivus, -a, -um.
arrival, adventus, -ús, m.
arrive, advenió, 4; pervenió, 4.
arro, sagitta, -ac, f.
art, ars, artis, r.
as, ut; as . . . as, tam . . . quam;
same . . . as, idem . . . qui; (= since), cum; (= when), cum.
Asia, Asia, -ae, f.
ashamed (be), pudet, 2 (415).
ask of, quaeró, 3.
assemble, conveníó, 4.
at, in, w. acc. or abl.; ad, w. acc.;
apud, w. acc.; in combination w.
verbs (wonder at, etc.), see the
verbs; w. names of towns, locative
case (334).
Athenian, Athénéìnsis, -e.
Athens, Athénae, -ãrum, f.
attentively, diligenter.
author, auctor, -óris, m.
away (go), abeo (327); discéddo, 3.
away from, ē or ab, w. abl.; ē or
ex, w. abl.

benefit, n., beneficium, -i, n.
benefit, v., prósium (293), w. dat.
besiege, obsideó, 2; oppúgnó, 1.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
better, melior, -us, compar. of bo-
nus (208).
between, inter, w. acc.
big, mágnum, -a, -um.
bind, vínció, 4.
bird, avis, -is, f. (154).
black, niger, -gra, -grum; áter,
átra, átrum.
blame, vituperó, 1; culpó, 1.
blind, cæcus, -a, -um.
blood, sanguis, -inis, m.; cruor,
-óris, m.
boar, aper, aprí, m.
boat, návica, -ae, r.; cymba,
-ae, r.
body, corpus, -oris, n.
bold, audáx, -ácis.
boldly, audácter.
book, liber, -brí, m.
booty, praedá, -ae, r.
born (be), náscor, 3.
Boston, Bostonia, -ae, f.
both (each of two), uterque, utra-
que, utrumque (200); both . . .
and, et . . . et.
boy, puer, -erí, m.
bow, arcus, -ús, m. (247).
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, fortitúdo, -inis, f.
brake, frangó, 3; (through) per-
fringó, 3.
breeze, ventus, -i, m.; aura, -ae, f.
bribe, corrúpó, 3.
bridge, póns, pontís, m.
bring, portó, 1; feró (321); (up),
úducó, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
broad, látus, -a, -um.
brook, rívus, -i, m.
brother, frater, -tris, M.
Brutus, Brütus, -i, M.
built, aedificō, 1.
burden, onus, -eris, N.
but, at; autem; sed (393); (that), quin.
buy, emō, 3.
by, ā, ab, w. abl.; (denoting means or instrument), w. abl. alone.

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, M.
calls, nominō, ī, 1; appellō, ī, 1; vocō, 1.
calm, acquis, -um, placidus, -a.
camp, castra, -ōrum, N. [-um.
Campania, Campānia, -ae, f.
can, possum (292).
care, cura, -ae, f.
carefully, diligentiter; cum curā (144).
carry, portō, 1; ferō (321); (back), referō; carry on war, bellum gerere.
cart, carrus, -i, M.
Carthage, Carthāgo, -inis, f.
Cato, Catō, -onis, M.
certain (a), quidam, quaedam, quid (quod) dam (279. 4); sure, certus, -a, -aum.
chance, fors, -tis, f.; cāsus, -ūs, M.
change, mūtō, 1.
cherished, colō, 3.
chief, principis, -cipis, M.
Cicero, Cicēro, -onis, M.
Cimbri, Cimbri, -ōrum, M.
circumstance, rēs, rei, f.
citadel, arx, arcis, f.
citizen, cīvis, -is, M. and f. (154.)
city, urbs, -is, f.
clerk, scriba, -ae, M.
cliff, rūpēs, -is, f.
clothe, vestīō, 4.
cold, adj., frigidus, -a, -um.
cold, n., frigus, -oris, N.
Collatinus, Collatīnus, -ī, M.
come, veniō, 4; (down), dēscendo, 3; (out), égredior, 3; (together), conveniō, 4; (off), abeo (327).
coming, n., adventus, -ūs, M.
command, imperō, 1, w. dat; jubēō, 2, w. acc.; praesum, w. dat.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, M.; dux, ducis, M.
commonwealth, rēs pública, reī publicae, f.
comrade, comes, -itis, M. and F.
companion, comes, -itis, M. and F.
compel, cógō, 3.
condemn, damnō, 1.
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3 (186).
consul, cōnsul, -is, M.
consulship, cōnsulītus, -ūs, M.
contemplate, cōntemplō, 1.
contested, contentus, -a, -um, w. abl.
converse, colloquor, 3.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, f.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
correct, corrigō, 3.
counsel, cōnsiliō, -i, N.
country (fatherland), patria, -ae, f.; (not city), rūs, rūris, N.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
covered with leaves, frondōsus, -a, -um.
cowardice, ignāvia, -ae, f.
cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um.
create, creō, 1.
creator, creator, -ōris, M.
cross, tr., trānsscendō, 3; tr. and intr., trānsseō (327).
cruelly, crudēlīter.
cultivate, colō, 3.
Cumae, Cūmae, -ārum, f.
cunning, n., calliditās, -ātis, f.
cup, pōculum, -ī, n.
Cyrus, Cyrus, ī, m.

Dædalus, Dædalus, -ī, m.
daily, cotūdē.
danger, periculum, -ī, n.
daughter, filiā, -ae, f.
day, diēs, -ī, m. and f. (254).
daybreak (at), prīmā lūce.
dear, cărus, -a, -um.
death, mors, -is, f.
deep, altus, -a, -um; profundus, -a, -um.
defeat, n., clādēs, -is, f.
defeat, v., vincō, 3; superō, 1 (186).
defend, dēfendō, 3.
defender, dēfensor, -ōris, m.
delay, morā, -ae, f.
delight, dēlectō, 1.
deliver, dēferō (321).
demand restitution, rēs repetō, 3.
Demosthenes, Dēmosthenēs, -is.
depart, discēdō, 3; exeō (327).
deprive, privō, 1; w. abl.
descent, dēscendō, 3.
desert, désērō, 3.
deserve, mercē, mereor, 2.
design, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
desire, volō (316); dēsiderō, 1 (319); cupiō, 3.
despair, dēspērō, 1.
despise, contemno, 3.
destroy, dēleō, 2.
difficult, difficilis, -e. (207.)
difficulty (with), vix.
diligently, diligenter.
discharge, fungor, 3, w. abl.
disclose, ōnūniō, 1.
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
disgusted (be), pigēt, 2 (416).
divide, dīvidō, 3; (share), partior, 4.
do, faciō, 3; agō, 3.
dog, canis, -is, m. and f.
doubt, n., dubium, -ī, n.
doubt, v., dubitō, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
dove, columba, -ae, f.
down (tear), rescindō, 3; (come)
dēscendō, 3.
draw, trahō, 3; (up), subducō, 3.
drink, bibō, 3.
drive, agō, 3; (off), submoveō, 2.
duty, officium, -ī, n.
dwell, habitō, 1; vivō, 3 (194).
each (one), quisque quaeque, quid(quod)que (279. 4); (of two), uterque utraque, utrum-
que (200).
eagle, aquila, -ae, f.
earth, terra, -ae, f.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e. (207.)
et, edō, 3.
egg, ōvum, ī, n.
eight, octō.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
elegant, ēlegāns, -antis.
elephant, elephāntus, -ī, m.
eelse, aliūs, -a, -ud (201).
embark, cōncendō, 3.
employ, admoveō, 2; ûtor, 3, w. abl.
encircle, ciugō, 3.
end, n., finis, -is, m. (154.)
end, v., finīō, 4.
endure, patior, 3; ferō (321),
tolerō, 1.
endurance, fortūtūdō, -inis, v.
enemy, hostis, -is, m. and f.; inim-
icus, -ī, m. (172).
enjoy, fruor, 3, w. abl.
Ennius, Ennīus, -ī, m.
enough, satis.
enter, ingredior, 3; incept (327).
entertain the hope, venio in spem.
entreaty, preces, -um, f.
Epirus, Æpirus, -i, f.
equally, pariter.
equanimity, æquus animus, m.
Europe, Europæ, -ae, f.
even, etiam; ipse (270. 6).
evident (it is), constat, 1.
e excellently, optime.
e explain, explicō, 1.
expulsion, P. of expellō.
eye, oculus, -i, m.

Fabricius, Fabricius, -i, m.
fact, rēs, rei, f.
fail, déficiō, 3; desum (297).
fair, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
faithful, fidēs, -a, -um; fidēlis, -e.
faithfully, fideliter.
Faliceans, Falsicē, -orum, m.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far and wide, longē lātēque.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
father, pater, -tris, m.
father-in-law, socer, -erī, m.
fault, vitium, -i, n.; culpa, -ae, r.; find fault with, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.
favor, favērō, 2, w. dat.
fear, n., metus, -ūs, m.
fear, v., timeō, 2; metuō, 3.
few, pauci, -ae, a.
fidelity, fidēs, -ī, f.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fierce, atrōx, -ōcis; ferōx, -ōcis.
fiftieth, quinquagesimus, -a, -um.
fifty, quinquāgintā.
fight, pugnō, 1; dimicō, 1.
fill, impleo, 2, -ēvi, -ētum; compleō, 2.
finally, dēnique.

find, reperiō, 4; inveniō, 4.
finger, digitus, -i, m.
finish, finiō, 4; cōnfiō, 3.
fire, ignis, -is, m.
first, primum, -a, -um.
fine, aptō, 1.
five, quīnque.
five hundred, quīngenti, -ae, -a.
flee, fugiō, 3.
fleet, clāsis, -is, f. (154.)
flight, fuga, -ae, f.
flock, grēx, gregis, f.
flow, fluō, 3.
flower, fōs, fōris, m.
fodder, pābulum, -i, n.
follow, sequor, 3.
folly, stultitia, -ae, f.
food, cibus, -i, m.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, m.
for, conj., nam; enim (not the first word).
for, sign of dative; prep., dē, prō, w. abl.; of time, space, purpose, in, w. acc.
forces, cópiæ, -ārum, f.
forget, obliviscor, 3.
forgetful, oblivius, -a, -um.
former (the), ille (275. 6).
forth (go), excō (327); ęgre-
dior, 3.
fortify, mūniō, 4.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
forty, quadrāgintā.
forum, forum, -i, n.
forward (go), prōcedō, 3; prō-
gredior, 3.
foully, turpiter.
fourteen, quattuordecim.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free, liber, -era, -erum. (71.)
free from, liberō, 1; w. abl.
friend, amicus, -i, m.
frighten, terreo, 2.
frog, rāna, -ae, v.
from, dē, w. abl.; away from, ā or ab, w. abl.; out of, ē or ex, w. abl.; (afar), longē.
fruit, fructus, -ūs, m.
full, plēmus, -a, -um.
furnish, praebēō, 2.

Galba, Galba, -ae, m.
game, lūdus, -ī, m.
garden, hortus, -ī.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, r.
Gauls, Gallī, -ōrum, m.
general, dux, ducēs, m. and f.; imperātor, -ōris, m.
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, m.
get, adīpiscor, 3; (possession), potiōr, 4, w. abl.; (by lot), sortiōr, 4.
gift, dōnum, -ī, n.
girl, puella, -ae, r.
give, dō, 1.
glory, gloria, -ae, r.
go, eō (327); (forth or out), eceō; (off or away), aebō; discēdō, 3; (down), descēdō, 3.
God, Deus, -ī, m. (262).
goddess, dea, -ae, r.
gold, aurum, -ī, n.
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um (71, 208).
good thing, bonum, -ī, n.
grain, frumentum, -ī, n.
great, māgnus, -a, -um.
greatly, māximē.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, r.
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
guard, n., custōs, -ōdis, m. and f.
guard, v., custōdiō, 4.

hand, manus, -ūs, r.
handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, m.
happy, beātus, -a, -um; fēlix, -īcis.
hard, dūrus, -a, -um; (dificuit), difficilis, -e.
hasten, contendēō, 3.
haughtily, superbē.
have, habēō, 2.
he, is, hic (270); ille (275).
head, caput, -itis, n.; be at the head of, praesum (297).
headlong, praeceps, -cipitis.
hear, audīō (223).
heart, cor, cordis, n.
heat, calor, -ōris, m.
heaven, caelum, -ī, n.
heavy, gravēs, -e.
Hector, Hector, -oris, m.
hero, vir, virī, m. (262).
hesitate, dubitō, 1; cunctōr, 1.
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, m. (154.)
himself, see self.
his, īmus (270); illīus (275); (own), suus, -a, -um.
history, historia, -ae, r.
hold, habēō, 2; teneō, 2.
hone, domicilium, -ī, n.; domus, -ūs, r. (262).
Homer, Homērus, -ī, m.
honor, n., honestas, -ātis, r.
honor, v., honōrō, 1.
hope, spēs, -ei, r.
Horatius, Horātius, -ī, m.
horn, cornu, -ūs, n.
horse, equus, -ī, m.
horseback (ride), in equō vehī; equitō, 1.
horseman, horse-soldier, eques, -itis, m.
hour, hōra, -ae, r.
house, domus, -ūs, r. (262).
how, quam; (many), quot.
huge, māgnus, -a, -um; immānis, -e; ingēns, -entis.
human, hūmānus, -a, -um.
hundred, centum.
hunger, famēs, -is, r.
hunter, vēnātōr, -ōris, m.
hurl, coniciō, 3.
hurtful (be), noceō, 2, w. dat.
hustle, exturbō, 1.

I, ego (264).
Icarus, Īcarus, -i, m.
if, sī; īf not, nisi.
ignorant (be), nesciō, 4; īgnōrō.
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
imitate, imitō, 1.
immediately, statim.
in, in, w. abl.
increase, augēo, 2.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, m. and r.
inhabit, habitō, 1; incolō, 3.
injure, noceō, 2; obsum; w. dat.
instruct, ērudiō, 4; doceō, 2.
intend, in animō est; w. dat.
into, in, w. prep.
invite, invitō, 1.
iron (of), ferreus, -a, -um.
island, īnsula, -ae, f.
it, is, ea, id (270).
Italian, Italus, -i, m.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.
itself; see self.

Janus, Jānus, -i, m.
javelin, pīlum, -i, n.
jewel, ōrnamēntum, -i, n.
joy, gaudium, -i, n.
judge, jūdex, -icis, m. (105).
judgment, jūdicium, -i, n.
Julius, Jūlius, -i, m.
Jupiter, Jūppiter, Jovis, m. (262).
justly, jūstē.

keep off, arceō, 2.

kill, necō, 1; interiiciō, 3; occidiō, 3.
kind, benignus, -a, -um.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
kingship, regnum, -i, n.; imperium, -i, n.
knife, cultor, -trī, m.
know, know how, scio, 4.
known, nōtus, -a, -um.
labor, labor, -ōris, m.
lack, dēsum (297)
Laevinus, Laevinus, -i, m.
lake, lacus, -ūs, m. (247).
land, ager, agrī, m.; terra, -ae, f.
language, lingua, -ae, f.
large, māgnus, -a, -um.
last, suprēmus, -a, -um.
Latin, Latinus, -a, -um.
latter (the), hīc, haec, hóc (275. 5).
laugh, rīdeo, 2; (at), irīdeo, 2; (aloud), cachinō, 1.

law, lēx, lēgis, f.
lazy, piger, -grā, -grum.
lead, dūcō, 3; (out), ōdūcō, 3.
leader, dux, ducis, m. and f.
leaf, folium, -i, n.
leap over, trānsiliō, 4.
learn, discō, 3.

leg, crūs, crūris, n.

line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, f.
lone, leō, -onis, m. (134).
listen, audiō, 4 (223).
literature, litterae, -ārum, r.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, vivō, 3; habitō, 1 (194).
long, longus, -a, -um; a long time, diū.
longer (no), jam, w. neg.
look at, spectō, 1.
lose, ānītō, 3; perdō, 3.
lot (obtain by), sortior, 4.
loud (laugh out), cachinnō, 1.
love, amō, 1 (319).
low, humilis, -e.
lucky, felix, -īcis.

maidens, puella, -ae, r.
make, faciō, 3; (trial of), expe-
rior, 4.
man, vir, virī, m. (262); homo,
-inis, m. (138).
Manlius, Manlius, -ī, m.
manner, mōs, mōris, m.
many, multus, -a, -a.
Marcellus, Marcellus, -ī, m.
martial, instruō, 3.
master, dominus, -ī, m.; magis-
ter, -trī, m.
may, licet; w. dat.
means (by means of), use abl.
meet, obeō (327); go to meet,
oblivia eō, w. dat.
memory, memoria, -ae, r.
messenger, nuntius, -ī, m.
migrate, migrō, 1.
mind, animus, -ī, m.; mōns, men-
tis, r. (273).
mindful, menarum, -oris (150).
mine, mens, -a, -um (266).
Minerva, Minerva, -ae, r.
miserable, miser, -era, -erum.
miss, désiderō, 1.
Mithridates, Mithridatēs, -is, m.
modesty, modestia, -ae, r.

month, mēnis, -is, m.
monument, monumentum, -ī, n.
moon, lūna, -ae, r.
moral, mātus (208), magis.
most, plārimus, -a, -um (208).
mother, māter, -tris, r.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, moveō, 2.
much, multus, -a, -um (208).
multitude, multūdō, -inis, f.
must, oportet, 2; gerundive.
my, meus, -a, -um (266).

name, nōmen, -inis, x.
nation, gēnus, gentis, r.
native land, patria, -ae, f.
near, prope, w. acc.
neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -ī, m.
ever, nunquam.
new, novus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, f.
nightingale, luscinia, -ae, r.
ninety, nōnāgintā.
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
no, nihil, -a, -um (200).

nobody, no one, nēmō, -inis, m.
and f. (286); that no one (neg.
purpose), né quis.
no longer, jam, w. neg.
not, nōn.
nothing, nihil, indecl.
nourish, alō, 3; nutritio, 4.
now, nunc; jam.
Numa, Numa, -ae, m.
number, numerus, -i, m.
nurture, nutritio, 4.
oak, quercus, -ūs, r.
obey, pāreō, 2, w. dat.
obtain, adipsicer, 3; potior, 4, w.
abl.; (by lot), sortior, 4.
ocean, òceanus, -ī, m.
of, sign of genitive; dé, w. abl.; (out of), č or ex, w. abl.
offer, propónô, 3; offerô (321); praebô, 2.
often, saepe.
old, antiquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris (141); (man), senex, -is (262); (age), senectûs, -ûsis, r.
on, in, w. abl.; (of time), abl.
one, unus, -a, -um (200); one ... another, alias ... alius; the one ... the other, alter ... alter.
open, adj., patêns, -entis.
open, v., aperiô, 4.
opinion, judicium, -i, n.
oppose, obsîstô, 3; w. dat.
orator, oratór, -óris, m.
order, v., imperô, l, w. dat.; jubeô, 2, v. acc.
order (in order to), ut, w. subj.
other, alius, -a, -ud (201); some ... others, alii ... allî; (of two), alter, -era, -erum.
ought, débebô, 2; oportet, 2; gerundive.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
ourselves, see self.
out, in combination w. verbs, see the verbs.
out of, č or ex, w. abl.
over, in combination w. verbs, see the verbs.
overcome, vincô, 3; superô, 1 (186).
owe, débebô, 2.
own, proprius, -a, -um; (his, her, their), suis, -a, -um; (my), meus, -a, -um; (our), noster, -tra, -trum; (your), vester, -tra, -trum; (thy), tuus, -a, -um.
pain, dolor, -ôris, m.
parent, parēns, -entis, m. and f.
paper, pars, partis, f.

pass (narrow), angustiae, -arum, f.
pass by, praeterécô (327).
patience (with), patienter; cum patientiâ (144).
patiently, patienter.
peace, pâx, pácis, f.
people, populus, -i, m.; (common), pèlebs, -is, f.
peril, periculum, -i, n.
perish, percô (327).
Persians, Persae, -arum, m.
physician, medicus, -i, m.
place, n., locus, -i, m., in plur, m. and n.
place v., pônô, 3.
plain, planitîes, -eî, f.
plan, cōnsilium, -i, n.
pleasant, grâtus, -a, -um.
pleasing, grâtus, -a, -um.
pleasure, voluuptâs, -âtis, f.; (with), libenter.
pledge, âdès, -eî, f.
plough, n., arâtrum, -i, n.
plough, v., arô, 1.
poem, poëma, -atis, n.
poet, poëta, -aci, m.
point (be on the), see 422.
Polyphemus, Polyphæmus, -i, m.
Pompey, Pompejus, Pompeî, m.
poor, miser, -era, -erum; pauper.
-eris (167. 3).
possess, habeô, 2; potior, 4, w. abl.
possession (get possession of).
potior, 4, w. abl.; adipsicor, 3.
postpone, differô (321).
power, imperium, -i, n.
praise, n., laus, laudîs, f.
praise, v., laudo, 1.
precept, præceptum, -i, n.
prefer, mălo (316).
present (be), adsum, w. dat.
pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
prevent, prohibeô, 2.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, m.; captīva, -ae, f.
proceed, prōcēdō, 3.
proclamation (make), ēdicō, 3.
promise, polliceor, 2; prōmittō, 3.
property, bona, -ōrum, n.
proud, superbus, -a, -um.
province, provinciā, -ae, r.
prow, rōstrum, -ī, n.
prudence, prūdentia, -ae, r.
punish, pūnīō, 4.
punishment, poena, -ae, r.
pupil, discipulus, -ī, m.
purpose (for the purpose of), ut
or quī, w. subj.; ad, v. gerund
or gerundīne; supīne.
put (to flight), fugō, 1; (off),
ifferō (321); (by), dēpōnō, 3;
(an end to), finiō, 4.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, m.

queen, rēgina, -ae, r.
quickly, celeriter.
raise, tollō, 3; levō, 1.
rather (wish), mālo (316).
read, legō, 3; (aloud), recitō, 1.
receive, recipio, 3; accipio, 3;
excipio, 3.
recite, recitō, 1.
recognize, āgnōscō, 3.
red, ruber, -bra, -brum.
refresh, recreō, 1.
Regulus, Rēgulus, -ī, m.
regio, rēgō, 1.
relate, trādō, 3; nārro, 1.
relieve, īberō, 1; w. abl.
remain, manco, 2; restō, 1.
remember, memoriā teneō.
remove (= emigrate), dēmigrō, 1.
Remus, Remus, -ī, m.
render aid, auxilium ferō.
renown, fāma, -ae, r.
renowned, amplus, -a, -um; clārus, -a, -um.
report, nūntiō, 1.
republic, rēs publica, rei publicae, -ae, r.
respect, vereor, 2.
respects (in all), omnibus rebus.
rest (the), cēterī, -ae, -a.
restitution (demand), rēs reper-
tō, 3.
restrain, coerceō, 2.
results (it), fit (327).
retain, retineō, 2.
retreat, sē recipiō, 3.
return, redeō, (327).
reward, praemium, -i, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, m.
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, m.
rich, dīves, -ītis (167. 3).
ride, pass. of vehō, 3; equitō, 1.
rightly, recte.
rise, orior, 4.
river, amnis, -is, m.; fluvius, -ī,
m.; flūmen, -inis, n. (172).
road, via, -ae, r.
rob, spoliō, 1; privō, 1; w. abl.
robber, latrō, -onis, m.
Roman, Rōmanus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, r.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, m.
rose, rosa, -ae, r.
rough, asper, -era, -erum.
ruddy, ruber, -bra, -brum.
rule, regō, 3 (180); rēgnō, 1.

sad, trīstis, -ae.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
sagacious, prūdens, -entis.
sail, pass. of vehō, 3; nāvīgō, 1.
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake (for the sake), causā, w. gen.
Sallust, Sallustius, -ī, m.
same, īdem, eadem, idem (270).
Samnite, Samnīs, -ītis.
Saturn, Săturnus, -i, m.
save, servö, 1.
say, dicö, 3; (keep saying), dic-tö, 1.
scare, terreö, 2.
school, schola, -ae, f.
Scipio, Scippiö, -onis, m.
sea, mare, -is, n.
see, vidö, 2; (through), per-spicö, 3.
second, secundus, -a, -um.
seek, petö, 3; quaeö, 3.
seem, vidöcor, 2.
seize, rapö, 3.
sell, ipse, -a, -um (270); suö (264).
send, mittö, 3; (back) remittö, 3.
senate, senätus, -üis, m.
September, September, -bris, m.
servant, minister, -tri, m.; serv-us, -i, m. (66).
set-out, proüscur, 3.
seven, septem.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
share, partö, 4.
sharply, acriter.
she, ca, Öjus, f.
sleep, ovös, -is, f.
shepherd, pässtor, -öris, m.
shield, scütorium, -i, n.
ship, näsvis, -is', f. (154).
shore, litus, -öris, n.
short, brevis, -e.
shout, clämö, -öris, m.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, f.
sick, aeger, -gra, -gram. (71.)
side, latü, -eris, n.
signal, signum, -i, n.
silent (be), taceö, 2.
since, cum, w. subj.
sing, canö, 3; cantö, 1.
sister, soror, -öris, f.
sit, sedeö, 2.
sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
skilful, peritus, -a, -um.
slave, servus, -i, m. (66).
slavery, servitüs, -ütis, f.
slay, necö, 1; interficiö, 3; oc-cüö, 3.
sleep, n., somnus, -i, m.
sleep, v., dormö, 4.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
smith, faber, -brö, m.
Socrates, Socrates, -is, m.
soldier, miles, -üis, m.
Solon, Solöö, -onis, m.
some one, aliquis, -qua, (quod)
-quot (279.2); quëdam, quae-
dam, quod (quod) dam (279.5);
some . . . others, alii . . . alii;
(of two parties), alteri . . . alteri;
ofen not expressed.
something, aëquid.
song, caëtus, -üis, m.; carmen,
-inis, n. (278).
som-in-law, gener, -eri, m.
soon, mox.
soothe, mollö, 4.
sound, fons, fontis, m.
Spain, Hispänia, -ae, f.
spare, parcö, 3; w. dat.
speak, loquö, 3; dicö, 3; speak
to, alloquö, 3.
spear, hasta, -ae, f.
sprightly, acriter.
spring, fons, fontis, m.
spy, explëtor, -öris, m.
stab, tränfigö, 3.
stain, maculö, 1.
star, stella, -ae, f. (301).
start (= set out), proüscur, 3.
state, civitäs, -ätis, f.
statue, statua, -ae, f.
step, gradüs, -üis, m. (245).
story, fäbula, -ae, f.
street, via, -ae, f.
strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.
study, n., studium, -i, n.
study, v., studeō, 2, v. dat.
sturdy, validus, -a, -um.
successfully, optimē; fēliciter.
suddenly, imprōvisō.
suffer, patior, 3; tolerō, 1; suf-
ferō (321).
suitable, opportūnus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -ātis, r.
summon, invitō, 1.
sun, sōlīs, m.
surpass, superō, 1; vincō, 3
(186).
surrender, dēdō, 3.
surround, circumve-
nō, 4.
survive, supersum (297).
swear, jūrō, 1.
sweet, dulcis, -e; suāvis, -e.
swift, vēlōx, -ācis; celer, -ēris, -ere
(179).
sword, gladius, -ī, m.

table, mēnsa, -ae, r.
tail, cauda, -ae, r.
take, capiō, 3; sūmō, 3; take a
walk, ambulō, 1.
tall, altus, -a, -um.
Tarentine, Tarentĭnum, -ī, m.
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, m.
task, pēnsum, -ī, n.
teach, docēō, 2.
teacher, magister, -ātris, m.; prae-
ceptor, -ōris, m.
tear down, rescindō, 3.
tedious, longus, -a, -um.
tell, nārrō, 1; dicō, 3.
temple, templum, -ī, n.
tender, tener, -ēra, -erum.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terrify, terrēō, 2.
terror, terror, -ōris, m.
than, quäm; abl. (212).
that, conj. (in purpose or result
clauses), ut; (after verbs of fear-
ing), nē; (not), nē; (after ex-
pressions of doubt), quīn; after
verbs of saying and the like, not
translated.
that, pron. (determin.), is, ca, id
(270); (demonstr.), ille, -a, -ud
(275); iste, -a, -ud (275); (rel.),
qui, quae, quod (279).
their, gen. plur. of is; (own),
suus, -a, -um.
themselves, see self.
them, tum; deinde.
there, ībi; as an expletive, not
translated.
thing, rēs, -īr, f.
think, arbitror, 1; putō, 1 (429).
thirst, sitiō, -is, f. (acc. -īm,
abl. -ī).
thirty, trīgintā.
this, (determin.), is, ca, id (270);
(demonstr.), hic, haec, hoc (275).
thon, tā.
though, cum, v. subj.
thousand, mīlle (311. 6).
three, trēs, tria (311. 4).
three hundred, trecenti, -ae, -a.
thrust forth, exturbō, 1.
through, per, v. acc.
throw, jaco, 3; concīco, 3.
time, tempus, -ōris, n.
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
to, sign of dative; ad, in, v. acc.;
(expressing purpose), ut, w.
subj.; ad, v. gerund or gerund-
ive; supine.
to-day, hodiē.
together with, cum, v. abl.
toil, labōrō, 1.
to-morrow, crās.
too, quoque; (much), nimium.
touch, tangō, 3.
towards, ad, in, v. acc.
tower, turris, -īs, r. (149).
town, oppidum, -ī, n.
townsmen, oppidānus, -ī, m.
train, exercēō, 2.
tree, arbor, -ōris, r.
trial (make), experior, 4.
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trumpet, tūba, -ae, f.
truth, vērum, -ī, n.
try, experior, 4; cōnor, 1.
turn, convertō, 3; (from), āvertō, 3; (out), āvenīō, 4.
twenty, vīginī.
two, duo, -ae, -ō (311. 4); (which of), uter, -tra, -trum; (each of), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, m.

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
undertake, suscipiō, 3; cōnor, 1.
unwilling (be), nōlo (316).
up, in combination w. verbs, see the verbs.
upon, in, w. acc. or abl.
use, ētor, 3; w. abl.
useful, útilis, -ē.
vain (in), frūstrā.
valley, vallis (or vallēs), -is, r.
valor, virtūs, -ātis, r.
very, superl. degree; admodum.
victorious, victor, -ōris, m.
victory, victūria, -ae, r.
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, r.
voice, vox, vōcis, r.

war, bellum, -ī, n.
warn, moneō, 2.
watch, vigilō, 1.
watchful, vigilis, -is (151. 4).
water, aqua, -ae, f.
way, via, -ae, f.; (= respect), rēs, rei, f.
weapon, tēcum, -ī, n.
weary, désessus, -a, -um.
weep, lacō, 2.
welcome, excipio, 3.
well, bene.
well (be), valeō, 2.
what, interrog., quis, quae, quid (quod) (279); (= that which), id quod.
when, cum.
whether, num; utrum.
which, quī, quae, quod (279); (of two), uter, utra, utrum (200).
while, dum.
white, albus, -a, -um; candidus, -a, -um.
who, rel., quī, quae; interrog., quis, quae (279).
whole, tōtus, -a, -um (200).
why, cūr.
wide, latus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, -ōris, r.
wild, ferus, -a, -um.
wild beast, fera, -ae, r.
wind, ventus, -ī, m.
wine, vīnum, -ī, n.
wing, āla, -ae, f.
winter, hiems, -is, r.
wise, sapientis, -entis.
wisely, sapienter.

wish, volō (316).
with, cum, w. abl.; sometimes abl. alone.
without, sine, w. abl.
witness, spectō, 1.

wonder, miror, 1; (at), admiror, 1.

wage (war), gerō, 3.
wagon, carrus, -ī, m.
walk (=take a walk), ambulō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -ī, m.
wander, vagor, 1.
want (=wish), volō (316); désiderō, 1.
want (=lack), careō, 2.
wooden

wooden, lūneus, -a, -um.
woods, silva, -ae, f.
word, verbum, -ī, n.
work, n., labor, -ōris, m.; opus, -eris, n.
work, v., laborō, 1.
world, mundus, -ī, m.
worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um.
would rather, mālō (316).
would that, utinam.
wound, n., vulnus, -eris, n.
wound, v., vulnerō, 1.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scribō, 2.

writing, scriptum, -ī, n.
wrong, injūria, -ae, f.
year, annus, -ī, m.
yesterday, herī.
yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud (275. 3).
you, sing. tū, plur. vōs.
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, m.; juvenis, -is, m.
your, sing. tuus, -a, -um; plur.
vester, -tra, -trum.
Zama, Zama, -ae, f.
zeal, studium, -ī, n.
GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM.

ablatīve

ablative, ablatīvus, -ī, m.; (of instrument) instrumentī; (of agent) agentis; (of manner) modi; (of specification) respectūs; (of separation) separātiōnis; (of description) qualitātis.

absolute, absolutus, -a, -um.

accent, accentus, -ās, m.

accusative, accusātīvus, -ī, m.

active, actīvus, -a, -um.

adjective, adjetīvum, -ī, n.

adverb, adverbiu, -ī, n.

agent, agēns, -entis, n.

agree, congruō, 3; v. abl.; concordō, 1.

agreement, concordātiō, -onis, r.

alphabet, alphābētum, -i, n.

answer, a., respondō, 2, 1,

antecedent, antecedēns, -entis, n.

apposition, appositiō, -onis, r.; (be in) appōnō, 2, 3.

cardinal, cardinālis, -e.

case, casus, -i, -m.

clause, clausα, -ae, r.

common or appellative, appellātīvus, -a, -e.

comparative, comparātīvus, -a, -um.

correlation, comparātiō, -onis, r.

compound, compositus, -a, -um.

concessive, concessīvus, -a, -um.

condition, hypothesis, -is, r.; conditiō, -onis, r.

conditional, hypotheticus, -a, -um; conditionālis, -e.

conjugation, conjugātiō, -onis, r.

conjunction, conjunctiō, -onis, r.

consonant, littera consonāns, -antis, or consonāns, -antis, r.

construction, construction, -onis, r.

correction, colloquium, -i, n.

correct, adj., ictus, -a, -um.

correct, v., corrō, 2, 3; emendō, 1.

correctly, ictē.

dative, datīvus, -ī, m.

declension, declinātiō, -onis, r.

decline, declinō, 1.

declinable, declinābilis, -e.

defective, defective, -a, -um.

degree, gradus, -uīs, m.

demonstrative, demonstrātīvus, -a, -um.

deponent, dépōnēns, -entis.

derive, trahō, 3.

description (abl. of), qualitātis, -ātis, r.

determinative, definitus, -a, -um.

difference, discriminēn, -inis, n.

diminutive, diminūtivum, -ī, n.

diphthong, diphthongus, -i, m.

direct, directus, -a, -um; rēctus, -a, -um.

discourse, ὥρα, -onis, r.

discuss, tractō, 1.

dissyllable, dissyllābus, -ī, m.

distributive, distributīvus, -a, -um.
end, v., dēsinō, 3.
English, Anglicus, -a, -um.
English (in), Anglicē.
etymology, etymologia, -ae, r.
example, exemplum, -i, n.; (for)
ut; exemplī causa.
exception, exceptiō, -onis, r.
feminine, fēminīnus, -a, -um.
finite, finitus, -a, -um.
formation, formātiō, -onis, r.
future, futūrum, -i, n.
future perfect, futūrum exāctum.
gender, genus, -eris, n.
genitive, genētīvus, -ī, m.
gerund, gerundium, -i, n.
gerundive, gerundīvum, -ī, n.
govern, regō; pass. of jungō or
conjungō, foll. by cum u. abl.
grahmar, grammatica, -ae, f.

imperative, modus imperātīvus
or imperātīvus, -ī, m.
imperfect, imperfectum, -i, n.
impersonal, impersōnālis, -e.
increase, crēscō, 3.
indicative, modus indicātīvus,
-ī, m., or indicātīvus, -ī, m.
indelible, indēclinābilis, -e.
indirect, indirēctus, -a, -um; ob-
liquus, -a, -um.
infinite, modus infinitīvus or
infinitīvus, -ī, m.
instrument, instrumentum, -ī, n.
interjection, interjectiō, -onis, r.
interrogative, interrogātīvus, -a,
-um.
intransitive, infrānsitīvus, -a,
-um.
irregular, irrēgulāris, -e; anō-
malus, -a, -um.

Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um.
Latin (in), Latīnē.
lesson, pēnsum, -ī, n.
letter, littera, -ae, r.
limit, limītō, l.
liquid, liquidus, -a, -um.
locative, locātīvus, -ī, m.
long, longus, -a, -um; prōductus,
-ā, -um.
manner, modus, -ī, m.
masculine, masculīnus, -a, -um.
mean, significō, l.
meaning, significātiō, -onis, r.
mistake, n., error, -ōris, m.
mistake, v., errō, l.
monosyllable, monosyllābum, -ī,
n.
mood, modus, -ī, m.
mute, mūtus, -a, -um.
negative, negātīvus, -a, -um.
neutral, neuter, -tra, -trum.
nominaive, nōminātīvus, -ī, m.
noun, nōmen, -inis, n.; substau-
tīvum, -ī, n.
numeral, numerālis, -e.
object, objectum, -ī, n.
ordinal, ordinālis, -e.

paradigm, paradigma, -atis, n.
participle, participium, -ī, n.
particle, particula, -ae, r.
partitive, partītīvus, -a, um.
passive, passīvus, -a, -um.
perfect, perfectum, -ī, n.
person, persōna, -ae, r.
personal, persōnālis, -e.
phrase, phrāsis, -is, r.
pluperfect, plūsequamperfectum,
-ī, n.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>plúrális, -e.</td>
<td>study, v., studeó, 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>positive</td>
<td>positívus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>subject, subjectum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preposition</td>
<td>praépositiō, -onis, r.</td>
<td>subjunctive, modus subjunctivus, -i, m., or subjunctivus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>praesēns, -entis, n.</td>
<td>substantive, substantivum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>principal</td>
<td>prīncipālis, -e.</td>
<td>substantively, substantīvē.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronoun</td>
<td>prōnōmen, -inis, n.</td>
<td>superlative, superlatīvus, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proper</td>
<td>proprius, -a, -um.</td>
<td>supine, supīnum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quantity</td>
<td>quantitās, -ātis, r.</td>
<td>syllable, syllaba, -ae, r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>interrogātiō, -onis, r.</td>
<td>syntax, syntaxis, -is, r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflexive</td>
<td>recíprocus, -a, -um; reflexīvus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>teacher, praecceptor, -ōris, m.; magister, -āri, m.; magistra, -ae, r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regular</td>
<td>régulāris, -e.</td>
<td>tense, tempus, -oris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative</td>
<td>relātivus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>termination, terminātiō, -onis, r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember</td>
<td>memoriā teneō.</td>
<td>transitive, transitīvus, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>review</td>
<td>recōgnōscō, 3; (lesson) pēnsum recōgnōscendum.</td>
<td>treat (= discuss), tractō, i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>root</td>
<td>rādix, -īcis, r.</td>
<td>verb, verbum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rule</td>
<td>régula, -ae, r.</td>
<td>vocabulary, vocābulārium, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>school</td>
<td>schola, -ae, r.</td>
<td>vocative, vocātivus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentence</td>
<td>sententia, -ae, r.</td>
<td>voice, vox, vocīs, r.; genus, -eris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>separation</td>
<td>séparātiō, -onis, r.</td>
<td>vowel, lītera vocālis, -is, r., or vocālis, -is, r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequence</td>
<td>consēcutiō, -onis, r.</td>
<td>wish, optātiō, -onis, r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>brevis, -e; correctus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>word, verbum, -i, n.; vocābulum, -i, n.; vox, vocīs, r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sibilant</td>
<td>sibilus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>yes, certē, certissimē; vērō; ita est, ista sunt; verb of question repeated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>singulāris, -e.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sound</td>
<td>sonus, -i, m.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specification</td>
<td>respectus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speech</td>
<td>(part of) orātiō, -onis, r.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stem</td>
<td>basis, -is, r.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>n., studium, -i, n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX.

The general vocabularies are to be used as an index to words (with some exceptions) for which reference is needed. Full-face figures refer to sections, not pages. A superior figure (e.g. 10³) indicates a foot-note. Most abbreviations will readily be understood: ff. = and following; inv. = imperative.

A.

ā or ab, 61, 62.
ā-verbs, 86.
Abbreviations beginning letters, 437, 438.
Ablative, translation of, 14², 59¹; of agent, 61, 62; of means or instrument, 90, 91; of material, 92, II, 8¹; of separation, 128-130; of time, 135, 136; of manner, 144, 145; w. comparatives, 211, 212; of specification, 259, 260; w. ător, etc., 303, 304; w. preps., 333; of place, 335, 3; descriptive, 341, p. 222³⁴; absolute, 412; abl. sing. of vowel stems in 2d decl., 151, 2.
Abstract nouns, 168¹.
-ābus, in dat. and abl. plu., 19¹.
Accent, 7; before enclitics, 7, (1).
Accusative, direct obj., 25, 26; predicate, 92, I, 5², 93, II, 7, 171, II, 3¹, 250, II, 4³; two accs., 131, I, 8², 197, II, 10⁸; w. verbs of remembering and forgetting, 305, 306; of extent, 312, 313; w. preps., 333, 4; of limit, 334, 335, 2; w. inf., 400, 401; w. some impers. verbs, 415, 3, 4, 416.
Ad, w. gerunds and gerundives, 432, 3.

Adjectives, of 1st and 2d decls., 44, 71; of 3d decl., 105, 134, 141, 150, 164; irregular, 200; comparison of, 205 ff.; poss. adj. prons., 266; interrog., 279, 3; numeral, 311; agreement with nouns, 45, II, 1¹, 53, 54; used as nouns, 117; of one, two, or three terminations, 155; agreement with understood subject, 197, I, 8²; order w. prep. and noun, 64, I, 7¹; order w. gen. and noun, 124, I, 6³; method of declining, 44².
Adverbs, formation of, 216 ff.; comparison of, 219; numeral, 311, 8.
Agent, abl. of, 61, 62; dat. of, 425 (5), 426, 444², cf. 428, II, 9⁶.
Aliquod as adj., 279, 2.
Alphabet, 1.
Antecedent of rel. pron., 280 ff.; omitted, 287, I, 10³, p. 221¹⁰.
Antepenult, 5, 5.
Anything at all, quidquam not aliquid, 279, 6, 440¹¹.
Apposition, 118, I, 2¹, 157, 158, 197, II, 8⁷.
Augustus et Iulius (Coll.), 9.
INDEX.

B.

Battle of Cannae (for trans.), 339, 378.
Battle of Marathon (for trans.), 291.

C.

Caesar's Two Invasions of Britain (for trans.), 448.
Cardinal numerals, 311.
Cases, names of, 10; alike in form, 16.
Cause, expressed by cum clause, 375; by part., 409, 7, 412, 3.
Charon et Mercurius (Coll.), 187.
Cognomen, 195, 204.
Collective nouns, 163.

Colloquia, Augustus et Iulius, 9, 58, 80; Pater et Filiiolus, 95, 222, 302; Frater et Sororcula, 111, 162, 269, 274; Praeceptor et Discipulus, 126, 133, 195, 204, 234, 261; Magister et Discipulus, 139; Duo Pueri, 148; Father and Son, 173; Charon et Mercurius, 187; Jacobus et Augustus, 242; Socrates et Rhadamanthus, 290; Titurus et Melibeus, 332; Jannah and Jacobus, 388.

Commands and appeals, 391.
Comparative degree, formation of, 206, (1), 219; with and without quam, 211, 212; trans. by too, p. 220.
Comparison of adjs., 205 ff.; of advs., 219.
Compound tenses, 97.


Consonants, 3; sounds of, 4.
Consonant stems, 104, 134, 140.
Cum, conj., temporal, causal, and concessive, 372 ff.
Cum, prep., with mē, tē, etc., 265, 3; w. abl. of manner, 144, 145.

Customs and Habits of the Britons (for trans.), 449.

D.

Dative of possessor, 32; indirect obj., 31, I, 7, 8, 9, II, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34; w. comps. of sum, 295; of service, 291, 296, II, 7, 344; w. certain verbs, 342, 343; double dative, 344; w. intransitives, 417, 418; of agent, 425, 426; not to be taken for abl., 184, 6.

Death of the Pet Sparrow (for trans.), 421.

Declension, paradigms of: 1st, 14; 2d in -us and -um, 38; in -er, 59, 65; adjs. of 1st and 2d, 71; 3d, mute stems, 105; liquid stems, 134; sibilant stems, 140, 141; i stems, 149, 150; mixed stems, 163-165; comparatives, 209; 4th, 245; 5th, 254; special, 262; prons., 264, 270, 275, 279; duo and tress, 311, 4.

Definitions, sometimes not given in vocabs., 57, I, 1.

Demonstrative pronouns, 275.
Dependent verbs, 1st and 2d conj., 298 ff.; 3d and 4th conj., 303 ff.

Derivation, 345.
INDEX.


E.


F.


G.


II.

Hic, demon. of 1st pers., 275, 1; in contrast with ille, 275, 5. Historical tenses, 347; pres. 444. Hortatory subjunctive, 390, 391.

I.

I-stems, 149 ff. I-verbs, 223. Ille, demon. of 3d pers., 275, 3; in contrast with hic, 275, 5. Imperfect, denoting continuance, 115, I, 5; of customary action, 445. Imperative, 389 ff.; not common in prohibitions, 391, (2). Impersonal verbs and verbs used impersonally, 415 ff., 425, (4). In not always to be translated by
INDEX.

in, 146, I, 21, 185, II, 7, 296, II, 105.
In omitted, 2917.
INCREASE in the gen., 152, 14.
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, 279.
INDICATIVE in cond. sentences, 385.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 399 ff.
INDIRECT OBJECT 31, 1, 7, 8, 9, II, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34.
INDIRECT QUESTIONS, 379 ff.
INFINITIVE as in Eng., 395 ff.; w. sub. acc., 399 ff.; tenses of, 402-403; fut. pass., 4021, 405, I, 21.
INSTRUMENT, abl. of, 90, 91.
INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, 279; adj., 279, 3; advs., 380, 1.
INTRANSITIVE VERBS used impersonally in the passive, 417, 418.
-ió, nouns in, 168; verbs in, of 3d conj., 235.
IPSE, distinguished from sé, 270, 4, 5; how translated, 270, 6.
IRREGULAR adj.s., 200 ff.; verbs, 72 ff., 292 ff., 316 ff.
Is as pers. pron., 270, 2; this or that, 275, 6.
ISLANDS, names of, 3342.
It, expletive, 35, I, 15, 56, I, 72.
-iun in gen. plu., 151, 3.
-ius in gen. sing. of adj.s., 200.
-ius and -iun, gen. of nouns in.
-voc. of nouns in -ius, 79.
-viv. perf.s. in, often drop v, 231, I, 91, 2, 327, 2.

J.
Jacóbus et Augustus (Coll.), 242.
Jóhannés et Jacóbus (Coll.), 388.

L.
LETTERS (for trans.), 437-440.
LIMIT, acc. of, 335, 23.
LIQUIDS, 3.
LIQUID STEMS, 134 ff.
-lis, superlative of adj.s. in, 207.
LOCATIVE, 10, 3, 334, 335, 1; in 1st decl., 14, 2; in 2d decl., 40; in 3d decl., 175.

M.
Magister et Discipulus (Coll.), 139.
MANNER, how expressed, 144, 145.
Márcus Porcius Cató, Puer (for trans.), 394.
MASCULINE GENDER, 11, 1, 3; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168, 1; in 4th decl., 244; in 5th decl., 253.
MATERIAL, how expressed, 92, II, 81.
MEANS, abl. of, 90, 91.
MIXED STEMS, 163 ff.
MOTION, verbs of, foll. by acc. with and without prep., 333-335.
MUTES, 3.
MUTE STEMS, 105 ff.

N.
NARRATIVE SENTENCES, 372, (3).
Násica and Ennius (for trans.), 407.
Ne, enclitic, 7, (1), 28, 12, 51, 31, 581.
Nó, 358, 369, 391, (1); omitted after cáve, p. 1784.
NEUTER GENDER, 11, 5; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168, 3.
Nóli in prohibitions, 391 (1)1.
Ñómen, 195, 204.
NOMINATIVE, subj., 24; pred., 46, 47, 92, I, 61, 63, 93, II, 63.
Ñóme, 51, 38.
-ns, nouns in, 167, 1.
NUMERAL adj.s., 311; advs., 311, 8.

O.
O, w. voc., 56, II, 14.
OBJECT, direct, 25, 26; indirect, 31, I, 7, 8, 9, II, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Of = because of, 330, II, 28.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Omission of my, thy, his, etc., 100;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of ut, 438, 446; of in, 291;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of nē, p. 178; of fore in trans.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>428, I, 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order of words in sentence, 23;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35, 1; 56, I, 103; 64, I, 71; 69,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, 101; 77, I, 50; 93, I, 92; 124,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, 63; 202, I, 65; 215; quaque,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>237, I, 62; ferē, 329, I, 61;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>386, I, 33; 404; 410, II, 95;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>438; 440; 446; p. 216; p.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinal numerals, 311.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ought, of past time, 419, I, 83.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles, 408 ff.; in principal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parts, 86; decl. of pres. act.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165, 408, 1, of perf. and fut.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>408, 2; perf. in comp. tenses as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj., 192, I, 71; 404, I, 41;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part. and verb trans. by two co-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinate verbs, 409, 2, 410, I, 54,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412, 4; abl. absolute, 412, 413;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. perf. act. part., how ren-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dered, 412, 6, 7; used as nouns,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>291.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive to be distinguished from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>progressive form in Eng., 69, II,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86, 123, II, 31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pater et Filiolus (Coll.), 95, 222,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partitive gen., 340, 438, 439,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penult, 5, 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect, sometimes distinguished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from pres. by long penult, 119,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191, I, 21; 232, I, 1; definite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and indefinite, 347; perf. subj. in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibitions, 391, (2); perf. part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans. by pres., 442, p. 217; w.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubi, ut, etc., 444; perf. subj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>really fut. perf., 391, (2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periphrastic conjugations: act.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422; pass., 423; paradigms, 424.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal pronouns, 264, 265;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when nom. of is expressed, 265, 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place, expressions of, 334 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive adj. prons., 266; when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omitted, 100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessor, dat. of, 32; cf. 4414.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Praecipitator et Discipulus (Coll.),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126, 133, 195, 204, 234, 261.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Praenomen, 195, 204.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predicate nom., 46, 47, 92, I, 63,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93, II, 63; acc., 92, I, 52, 93, II,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepositions, 333; order w. adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and noun, 64, I, 71.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present, translation of, 431; de-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noting continuance, 115, I, 52;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. pres. for Lat. fut., 116, I,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18, 385, 31; for Lat. fut. perf.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413, II, 10; sometimes distin-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guished from perf. by short pe-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nult, 119, 191, I, 21; w. dum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>263, 442, 444; pres. subj. trans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as fut., 369, 1, 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary tenses, 347.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal parts of verbs, 86.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal tenses, 347.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prohibitions, 391, (1), (2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive form in Eng. to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distinguished from passive, 69,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronunciation, Roman method,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4; English method, 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōserpina (for trans.), 199, 215,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>263.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Públius Cornēlius Scipio (for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans.), 188.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose, expressed by ut w. subj.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>352, 353; qui w. subj., 354;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut. part., 410, I, 96; ad w.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerundive, 432, 3; supine, 433,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>434; causā w. gen. of gerund or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerundive, 355, I, 3, p. 221.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX.

Q.

Quantity of vowels and diphthongs, 6, 1, 2; of syllables, 6, 3, 4, 5.
Quin, w. subj., 349, 350.
Quis, indef. pron. w. si, etc., 362, 1, 61, 43815.

R.

r, as sign of passive, 871; for s, 731, 3, 4, 142.
Reflexive pronoun, 264, 265.
Relative pronoun, 279; agreement, 280 ff.; in purpose clause, 364.
Rest, verbs of, foll. by abl., 333-335.
Result, w. ut, 368 ff.; to be distinguished from purpose, 352, 368, 44712.
Roman method of pronoun., 4.
-ys, nouns in, 167, 1.

S.

-s, monosyllables in, 167, 2.
Secondary tenses, 347.
Second decl., in us and um, 36 ff., 52 ff., in -er, 50 ff.
Semi-deponents, p. 1772.
Separation, how expressed, 128 ff.
Sequence of tenses, 347 ff.
Service, dat. of, 2911, 296, II, 73, 344.
Sibilant, 3.
Sibilant stems, 140 ff.
Socratis et Rhadamantus (Coll.), 290.
Sounds of letters, 4.
Specification, abl. of, 259, 260, p. 2186.
Stem, 121; in 2d decl., 36, 42; in verbs, 861; in 3d decl., 103, 104, 107, 151, 1, 152, 166, 167; in 4th decl., 243; in 5th decl., 252. Perf. stem w. long vowel, 1195.

Subject nom., 24; acc. 401; omitted, 50, I, 9.
Subjunctive of purpose, 352, 353, 364; of result, 368; w. cum, 372; in ind. questions, 379 ff.; in wishes and conditions, 383 ff.; hortatory, 390; perf. really fut. perf., 391, (2)2; fut. tense of, 425 (1. Meanings not given in paradigms, p. 261.
Superlative degree, formation of, 206, (2), (3); strengthened by quam, 4376.
Supine, 433, 434.
S. V. B. E. V., 4371.
Syllables, 5; quantity of, 6, 3, 4, 5.

Synonymous Words, pueri, liber, 60; magister, dominus, 66; minister, servus, 66; homo, vir, 138; amnis, flumen, fluvis, 172; hostis, inimicus, 172; celer, velox, 179; supero, vincō, 186; habito, vivō, 194; animus, mens, 273; cantus, carmen, 278; sidus, stella, 301; amō, diligō, volō, desiderō, 319; interrogo, regō, quaerō, 382; at, sed, autem, 393; judicō, censeō, existimō, arbitrō, putō, opinor, 429.

T.

Terminations, 15.
There, expletive, 35, I, 22; 56, I, 72; 220, I, 12.
Third decl., mute stems, 105 ff.; liquid stems, 134 ff.; sibilant
